PLANETPRESS® SUITE

Workflow Tools
Reference Guide
for

PLANETPRESS®
WATCH

PLANETPRESS®
OFFICE

PLANETPRESS®
PRODUCTION

Title	PlanetPress Workflow Tool Reference Guide
Revision	2009/10/21

Table of contents

1 Other Documentation

For more documentation on different PlanetPress Suite Products, refer to:

PlanetPress Workflow Tool User Guide
PlanetPress Talk Reference Guide
Trigger and Data Capture Guide
PlanetPress Search User Guide

2 Understanding PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools are input driven applications designed to output data in a variety of ways through diverse means to various applications and devices. PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools can be used as simple go betweens, passing along input data to output devices, but it can also perform various types of data processing, as you will see in the following chapters.

This section explains how PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools fits into the PlanetPress Suite. It describes how you can combine its various services to set up versatile automated processes to print jobs as well as generate other types of output.

Note that, depending on the context, the expression "PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools" shall be used whenever referring to any of the three possible tools - PlanetPress Watch, PlanetPress Office or PlanetPress Production. This will be the case in any topic covering a feature available in all three products. The shorter expression "PlanetPress Suite" will therefore be used to lighten the text, again depending on the context.

In this section, you will be able to answer the following questions:

- What is the difference between PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools?
- What was the original idea behind PlanetPress Watch, the first Workflow Tool?
- Are PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools programs like any other program?
- What are PlanetPress Suite configurations and processes?
- How does PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools actually work and what can they do?
- How do I manage my configuration?
- How are tasks performed and which ones are available?
- What are services, and what services are available in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools?
- How do I use the variable content documents I create in PlanetPress Design?
- What is variable content and where can I use it in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools?
- What is the difference between data files and job files?
- How does job and file naming work within dynamic PlanetPress Suite processes?
- What error handling tools and strategies can I use when I build PlanetPress Suite processes?
- What concepts are involved in printing?
- What steps are involved in the actual workflow?
- What format should I use to enter dates and times?

2.1 Key Concepts

Before you begin working with PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools and the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program, you may find it helpful to familiarize yourself with the following concepts:

- PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools
- The Origins of PlanetPress Watch
- The Nature of PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools
- Configurations and Processes
- How does PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools actually work and what can they do?
- The Configuration and its Processes
- Tasks
- More on PlanetPress Suite Services
- PlanetPress Design and PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools
- Data
- Data File and Job File
- Job File Names and Output File Names
- Error Handling Tools
- PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools and Printing
- The PlanetPress Suite Workflow

2.1.1 PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools

What is the difference between PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools?

There are three flavors of PlanetPress Suite Workflow softwares:

- PlanetPress Watch
- PlanetPress Office
- PlanetPress Production

PlanetPress Watch

PlanetPress Watch opens the door to more complex document processing, distribution, and archiving possibilities. In PlanetPress Watch, you create tasks that control your document management workflow. You create a set of different tasks that make up processes that carry out various actions, such as receive data, analyze it and the send it to the appropriate printer. The flexibility of PlanetPress Watch, in concert with the capabilities provided by PlanetPress Image, PlanetPress Search, and PlanetPress Fax, also provides a means for more fully automating and increasing the efficiency of workflows.

In PlanetPress Watch you can:

- Run jobs immediately or schedule jobs to run automatically.
- Produce multiple output streams for jobs. For example, you might set up a single PlanetPress Watch process to print a copy of an invoice to send to a customer, fax a shipping confirmation to the customer, email a Portable Document Format (PDF) copy of the invoice to accounting, and archive a PDF copy.
- PlanetPress Fax and PlanetPress Image provide the faxing and PDF capabilities, respectively.
- Split a large print job over several printers, including printers in different geographical locations.
- Use variable content documents that dynamically pull information from an Open Database Connectivity compliant database.
- Write scripts to dynamically process the variable data for a document.
- Query printers on their current state, and take an action based on the response. For example, if a query determines the toner is low in a printer, the action might be to send an email to the technician responsible for maintaining that printer.

PlanetPress Office

In addition to all of the options and functions available in PlanetPress Watch, PlanetPress Office also offers:

- Capturing inputs from any host systems
- Document Input: using PDF documents as data files.
- Windows Input: capturing print job sent from any Windows application.
- Output on any number of non-PostScript devices and all licensed PostScript devices.

PlanetPress Production

PlanetPress Production is the fully functional workflow tool, offering, in addition to all of the options and functions
available in both PlanetPress Watch and Office, the following extra features:

- Output on any number of PostScript or non-PostScript devices, whether licensed or not.

2.1.2 The Origins of PlanetPress Watch

What was the original idea behind PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools?

Originally, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools came in only one flavor, PlanetPress Watch, which was basically designed to add triggers to data sent to printing devices. As you know, for a document created with PlanetPress Design to merge with incoming data, a line of code (a trigger) identifying the document must be added to the data.

Earlier versions of PlanetPress Watch were simply used to monitor—or *watch*—data source locations, such as folders or Line Printer Daemons. When data was received, the required triggers were added and the whole thing was then automatically routed to the appropriate printing devices.

Since then, PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools - PlanetPress Watch, PlanetPress Office and PlanetPress Production - have been enhanced to handle a variety of inputs, to perform data processing tasks, and to generate a variety of outputs: print, fax, email, PDF, etc.

Related topics:

- The Nature of PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools
- Configurations and Processes
- More on PlanetPress Watch and How it Works
- The Configuration and its Processes

2.1.3 The Nature of PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools

Are PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools programs like any other program?

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools acts as a sort of dispatcher. On the one hand, it retrieves data and controls plugins that retrieve data from watched locations, and on the other hand it sends data and controls plugins that send data to various devices, for printing or to generate documents that can then be emailed or faxed. PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools can also perform a variety of operations on the data using its action plugins.

In fact, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools plugin based architecture enables almost limitless customization. You can create or purchase compatible plugins, drop them in any of the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools plugin folder and use them to perform other operations. You can even find free unsupported plugins on the Objectif Lune Web site.

A) Folders containing data from various applications or systems. PlanetPress Watch/Server polls these folders to get input data. B) Folders to which PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools push either data or documents in various forms. The output from a PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool then follow its way to a variety of destinations, such as printers, faxes, email addresses, etc.

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools are service applications, or if you will, a applications that continuously run on a given computer and that perform actions automatically. Those actions are defined in a PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools configuration. To create and manage PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools configurations, you use one of three possible applications called PlanetPress Watch Configuration PlanetPress Office Configuration PlanetPress Production Configuration. A given computer can only run one PlanetPress Suite configuration at a time. The PlanetPress Suite Service Console may be used to monitor the services running on a given computer.

Related topics:

- The Origins of PlanetPress Watch
  (Page 4)
- Configurations and Processes (Page 0)
- More on PlanetPress Watch and How it Works (Page 7)
- The Configuration and its Processes (Page 9)

2.1.4 Configurations and Processes

What are PlanetPress Suite configurations and processes?

PlanetPress Suite configurations are defined as a set of processes that each include various tasks (the actions performed by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools).

- A PlanetPress Suite configuration must be composed of at least one process, but it may include as many as 512.
- Each process must have at least one primary input task and one output task, but a single process may contain any number of secondary input tasks, actions tasks and output tasks.
- A PlanetPress Suite configuration can also have any number of specialty processes: Startup Processes and Subprocesses.
    - Startup processes are processes that run only once before every other process in a given configuration.
      They can be used to perform operations that need to be completed once before the configuration can
      actually be run, such as to map network drives.
    - Subprocesses are processes which can be called by any other process from any action task. They can be used to perform and reuse redundant operations that may need to be executed numerous times. Note that once a subprocess is called and triggered, the calling process will wait for the subprocess to complete before carrying on with its next task.

As processes may be active or not and since each process may have its own schedule, the various tasks associated with a given process may be turned on or off depending on the process' status (active or inactive) and schedule (process A may run during the day, for instance, while process B only runs at night).

The tasks included in a PlanetPress Suite process are basically designed to:

- Receive data as input (from an AS/400 via an LPD input, for instance).
- Optionally perform actions on the data (change the encoding perhaps).
- Generate output (send the data to a printer maybe).

In PlanetPress Suite Configuration, processes are represented using a tree structure made up of tasks leading to other tasks and sometimes branching off. Branches can be conditional or not. The tasks found on a given conditional branch are only executed if the condition is true. Tasks found on a branch that is not conditional are always executed.

A) Input task. B) Conditional branch. C) Branch. D) Output tasks. E) Action task.

For a configuration created in PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration to actually be executed by PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool, it must be sent to its PlanetPress Suite service.

Related topics:

About Subprocesses

Introduction

Subprocesses are special processes that can be called by any other process. These act exactly as subroutines in programming languages, allowing users to reuse existing processes by sharing them to the whole configuration file. They can thus be used to perform redundant operations that may need to be executed numerous times; for instance, archiving a copy of a zipped file received as the input job file, then decompressing it before sending the unzipped version of it back to the calling process .

Whenever a PlanetPress Suite process calls a subprocess, the main process (the caller) will wait for the called subprocess to finish its execution before carrying on with its own. This means the subprocess feature is synchronous with the main process. This also means the calling process actually appends the subprocess to its own workflow.

Subprocess dialog

Information tab

Double-clicking on a subprocess loads its properties. Contrary to normal processes, subprocesses do not have much to configure, and do not have a scheduling option, as they are triggered from existing and running processes. This basically means that it does not have any input data, job or job information of its own; it simply gets those from the main process. Therefore, their properties dialog is rather simple and informational.

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

Description: A simple text field to document a subprocess in order to keep track of what tasks it is performing.

Comments: A memo field allowing to comment a subprocess, again in an informational purpose.

Convert an existing process to a subprocess

To allow for maximum flexibitliy and backward compatibility with the subprocess feature, the **Convert to subprocess** option lets users transform existing processes easily. This option is available whenever a **Branch** task is selected; right-clicking on it will display the contextual menu, which holds the **Convert to subprocess** option.

Selecting this option automatically creates a new subprocess, takes the branch and all of its children tasks and inserts it in the new subprocess, including the branch task itself. In the main process, the branch is removed and replaced with a **GoSub** action task referring to the newly created subprocess.

Note: The **Branch** tasks options **Backup job file**, **Backup job information** and **Backup emulation**, are also automatically passed to the Subprocess, which means that, if the subprocess needs to use a different emulation than the calling process, a **Change Emulation** task is required.

If any task converted into a subprocess was previously using local variables, these variables must be removed or transferred to global variables or job information to be usable in the newly created subprocess.

A Note on BeginSub and EndSub

Every subprocess starts with a **BeginSub** input task and ends with a **EndSub** output task, both of which have nothing to configure and cannot be replaced or deleted. The simply represents entry and exit points for the subprocess.

2.1.5 More on PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools and How They Work

How does PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools actually work and what can they do?

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools offer a great deal of possibilities when it comes to receiving, processing and outputting data. As service applications, they run constantly on their host computer and continuously perform the tasks included in their respective configuration.

It is important to bear in mind that every task included in every process is automatically accomplished by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools, granted of course that the conditions required for each task to be initiated are true. If a process is inactive or not on schedule (see), for instance, its initial input task will not be performed and every other task included in that same process will thus not be initiated.

You could visualize a PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool process as a set of dominoes arranged to fall over one another. Each set begins with a single initial domino, but may then branch out in various ways. The first domino to fall can only be the initial domino. When it does fall, it knocks over the second domino and starts a reaction that may knock over all or only some of the other dominoes in the set. If the process includes conditional branches, for example, then those dominoes standing on one side of the branch will stay up.

Input tasks can get data from a number of sources. For example, a task might retrieve data from a database using an SQL query, or from a print job received from a UNIX or AS/400 computer using the LPR/LPD protocol.

Action tasks can manipulate the data in many ways. For example, a task can strip the data of its printer control characters, since those are unnecessary when printing to PostScript devices, or add a line of data that indicates the current date. You may use an action task to split a data file containing information on all customers into smaller files that only contain information on individual clients.

Output tasks can save text files to an archive folder, send data to PostScript printers where resident PlanetPress Design documents are waiting, create PDF files, send mails or faxes, etc.

Data flowing through PlanetPress Watch/Server can be used in the documents created with the help of PlanetPress Design, but it can also be used in other PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools tasks. A Send Email output task may, for instance, take sending addresses from the data at runtime.

Let us imagine a process that includes the following tasks:

> *A) An input task that receives data from a given data sources. B) An action task that splits the large data file received by the input task into smaller, more usable files (ones that only contain information on individual clients, for example). C) An output task that uses the data from the file created by the action task and that merges it with a PlanetPress Design document to create a PDF document that is sent via email. D) An output task that sends the data from the file created by the action task to a printer where it is merged with a PlanetPress document and printed.*

When data is received by the serial port identified in the input task, it is saved by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool. The input file thus created is then handed down to the action task that splits it and generates multiple files. Those files are then handed down to both output tasks. If the input task receives a file that contains information on ten clients, for example, the action task will typically create ten client-specific data files, and the output tasks will both be repeated ten times. Once for every client-specific file and thus once for each client. The illustration below is a representation of this example.

> *A) Data is received and a "multi-record" data file enters the process. B) The process comes to a branching and an exact copy of the input file is sent down each branch. C) "Single-record" data files are typically created by the Splitter action task. Each file then travels to the output tasks.*

Another thing that you should never forget is that PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools cannot work without a valid configuration and that a PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools session running on a given computer can only use one configuration at a time. Once you have created a configuration, you must "send" it to either PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools. When you do this, your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool forgets its previous configuration and starts executing the tasks included in the new configuration.

PlanetPress Suite and its Related Programs and Services

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools come with a number of other programs. The most important is the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program. It is a configuration interface to the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools. It lets you create processes and tasks and thus define configurations.

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools can use other programs included in the PlanetPress Suite, such as:

PlanetPress Fax	Used to generate faxes that are sent via a faxing program, such as WinFax PRO or Windows Fax.
PlanetPress Image	Used to generate image files, such as PDFs, JPEGs or TIFFs.

The tasks executed by PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools also require the use of the following programs:

PlanetPress Suite Messenger	Enables communication between all the parts included in the PlanetPress Suite. Note that PlanetPress Suite Messenger 7 only works with version 7 components.
HTTP Client	Issues queries to HTTP servers and passes server replies as jobfiles to other PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools tasks.
HTTP Server	Receives HTTP server requests made via GET or POST commands and send server replies.
LPD input	Receives files using the LPD/LPR protocol and passes them as jobfiles to other PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools tasks.
Serial input	Receives files using a serial connection and passes them as jobfiles to other PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools tasks.
Telnet input	Receives files using a telnet connection and passes them as jobfiles to other PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools tasks.
FTP output	Sends files to other devices (typically FTP sites located on remote servers) using the File Transfer Protocol.
LPR output	Sends files to other devices (typically local or remote printers) using the LPD/LPR protocol.

With the exception of PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration, all the programs used by PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools are run as service applications. PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools can thus use them as required without the need for any user interaction.

If a faxing program, such as WinFax Pro or Windows Fax, is used to send faxes, this program must also be configured to send faxes without any user intervention. Note that PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools use PlanetPress Fax to generate faxable documents, but that it requires a faxing program to actually send the fax.

Services communicate with peripherals and devices on the network according to the needs of each input or output task. For example, when the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool needs to dispatch a job via FTP, it calls the FTP Client service to send the files.

The PlanetPress Suite Service Console, included in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program, can be used to monitor, start and stop PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool services (see More on PlanetPress Suite Services (Page 19), Users and Configurations (Page 0) and View Runtime Information via the PlanetPress Suite Service Console (Page 0)).

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools is designed to be used with other PlanetPress Suite products. In PlanetPress Design, you author documents that can be used in PlanetPress Suite processes. With PlanetPress Search, a plugin for Adobe® Acrobat®, you can search through PDF files you create in PlanetPress Suite processes using PlanetPress Image.

Related topics:

- More on PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools and How They Works

2.1.6 The Configuration and its Processes

How do I manage my configuration?

PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration is the program you use to create the processes and tasks that form the configuration used by PlanetPress Watch/Server.

Every process created with PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration begins with an input task and ends with at least one output task. In its simplest form, a process can simply retrieve data from a given folder and save it in a different folder. In most cases, though, processes are more elaborate and configurations, which may include many processes, can be extremely complex.

Not only can PlanetPress Watch/Server play the role of a data hub, receiving and forwarding data files, but it can also perform various operations both *on* the data and *with* the data.

Processes may include nodes from which the process branches out to accommodate multiple output tasks. Some nodes may be conditional and others not.

> *A) From this node, the process branches out two ways. A copy of the input data is sent down both branches in all cases. The Send To Folder task is always performed. B) From this node, the process branches out only one way. C) The data is sent down this branch if the condition is true (if the other printer is out of paper, for example). D) The data is only handed if the above condition is false.*

When PlanetPress Watch/Server comes to a node where a non-conditional branch starts, the flow is diverted to the non-conditional branch. When the tasks found on the non-conditional branch have been performed, the flow goes back to the main branch and its tasks are then performed. Note that the same job file is sent down the main branch and the non-conditional branch.

When PlanetPress Watch/Server comes to a conditional branch, the flow either stays on the main branch or is diverted to the conditional branch based on how the condition is resolved; the tasks found on the other branch are not performed.

All tasks can exchange data between themselves, regardless of the process in which they are included. In other words, an output task from process X can provide data to an input task included in process Y. A send to Folder task can, for instance, store data in a folder watched by a Folder Capture task included in any process. Note that the same can be achieved within a single process using a secondary input task (bear in mind that the fewer processes your configuration has, the easier it is to manage).

Processes and Schedules

Each PlanetPress Watch/Server process has its own schedule, which determines when the process is to run, and therefore when its tasks are to be performed. If an input task from a given process requires data from an output task included in another process, you should therefore take into account each process' schedule.

Multiple input tasks should not be competing for the same data. In other words, processes that run at the same time should not take *the same data* from *the same source*. There are many ways that you can prevent such situations from happening:

- For those input tasks that let you determine which files should be taken from the source location, use different criteria. You could have two Folder input tasks, one that retrieves files with a **txt** extension and one that retrieves files with a **.htm** extension, for example.

- For those input tasks that let you choose a specific source location, use different locations. You could have two LPD input tasks, each one retrieving files from a different LPD queues, for instance.

Related topics:

- Configurations and Processes (Page 5)
- Tasks (Page 0)

2.1.7 Tasks

How are tasks performed and which ones are available?

Tasks are placed along flowcharts referred to as a processes in PlanetPress Watch/Server jargon. All tasks are action tasks, since by definition any task will perform an action, but to simplify things, tasks have been grouped as either input, action or output tasks. Note that some tasks, such as the SOAP Client task, can be used as both an input and an output task.

A) Input tasks receive or retrieve data from the "outside world" and pass it to action or output tasks. B) Action tasks receive data from input tasks or from other action tasks and pass it down to other action tasks or to output tasks. C) Output tasks receive data from input or action tasks and send it to the "outside world".

Since each process must begin with an input task and end with at least one output task, when you edit a process using PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration, the program will only let you select tasks from the appropriate group. If you try to change the first task in a process, for example, PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration will only let you make a selection among input tasks.

A) The first task in a process is always an input task. B) If you try to replace an input task using the pop-up menu, PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration only lets you replace it by another input task (action and output tasks are greyed out).

Remember that a single process can include multiple branches, each branch ending in an output task, as illustrated below.

A) This input task snatches from a given folder any data file that has a name matching specific filename masks (*.txt, for example). B) This action task goes through the data in search of something, such as a word, for instance. When it finds that for which it is looking, it transfers part of the data to a new file that is sent down to the next task. The splitting process is repeated until the end of the data file is reached. C) This output D) task generates a fax document by merging the data it receives with a PlanetPress document.This output task typically sends the data it receives to a printer where it is merged with a PlanetPress document before being printed.

A multi-thread PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration is one that includes multiple processes. When PlanetPress Watch/Server runs a multi-thread configuration, it manages and performs all the tasks included in all its processes. Note that startup processes run before all the other processes in the configuration and only once.

Multiple tasks that are competing for the same input data should not be included in processes that run at the same time.

You may, in the same configuration, have two processes that include Folder Capture input tasks that watch the same folder, for example. In such a case, if the two tasks are looking for the same data and if the two processes have the same schedule, both tasks will be competing and it will be impossible to predict which task will in fact be the first to grab the data at any given time.

Creating and Editing Tasks

Whenever you create a task using PlanetPress Suite Workflow tools Configuration, a dialog box is displayed to let you set its properties as required. These properties may be accessed and changed at any time.

Splitter task included in a process and a PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration dialog box displaying the task's properties.

Input Tasks

Inputs tasks receive or retrieve data and pass it to other tasks. There is always an input task at the beginning of a process, but other input tasks may also be added elsewhere in any given process. The data is either received directly, via a port, or retrieved from a given location.

Name	Function
Create File	Creates a data file without polling a source location and passes it to the next task in the process. The file in question is often populated by the following task (by a Database action task, for instance). Bear in mind that a process that starts with a Create File input task will start running immediately when it becomes on schedule and that it will continuously run until it becomes off schedule, regardless of the presence or absence of data at any source location (since it has none).
Email input	Receives email messages via POP3 or Microsoft Outlook.
Folder Capture	Retrieves data files from a specified folder.
Folder Listing	Generates a list of the files contained in a given folder.
FTP input	Receives data files from a remote computer using the file transfer protocol.
HTTP Client	Queries data from HTTP servers.
HTTP Server	Receives and services requests from selected Web servers.
LPD input	Receives data files using the Line Printer Daemon service.
Serial input	Receives data files using a serial connection.
SOAP Client	Allows PlanetPress Watch to call web services residing on SOAP servers.
Telnet input	Receives data files using a Telnet connection.
WinQueue Input	Receives print jobs sent to a Windows printer queue. Note that the printer queue to which the job is sent must be paused, to keep it from grabbing the job before PlanetPress Watch/Server.
Input Error Bin	Receives data from other tasks when an error occurs (granted that the task that generated the error had its "On Error properties "configured accordingly). To manage errors in your configuration, you must have at least one error handling process.

Output Tasks

Output tasks receive data from other tasks and generate output. These tasks either send raw data to output devices (a printer, for example) or generate formatted documents that are then sent to output devices or applications (a printer or an email or faxing program, for instance).

Name	Function
FTP Output	Uploads the data file it receives to an FTP server.
PlanetPress Fax	Typically merges the data file it receives with a PlanetPress Design document to generate a faxable document that it sends via a faxing program, such as Windows Fax.
PlanetPress Image	Typically merges the data file it receives with a PlanetPress Design document to generate an image file (PDF, JPEG, TIFF, *etc.*) that it sends via an email program, such as Windows Outlook.
Printer Queue Output	Typically sends the data file it receives to a printer where it is merged with a PlanetPress Design document and printed (note that the merging process may optional take place on the PlanetPress Watch/Server workstation).
Print using a Winfdows driver	Sends jobs to printers without going through PlanetPress Watch printer queues (a.k.a. Windows printing).
Send Email	Sends data the files it receives via an email program, such as Windows Outlook.
Send to Folder	Stores the data file it receives to a folder.
SOAP Client	Allows PlanetPress Watch to call web services residing on SOAP servers.
Delete	Deletes the data file it receives.

Action Tasks

Action tasks may perform a variety of operations. If they typically receive raw data, process it and then hand it down to other tasks, some action tasks perform other functions, such as run scripts or executable programs. The list below gives you a clear idea of the spectrum of functions that action tasks can perform.

Name	Function
Add Document	Adds the PlanetPress Design document you select in the task to the data it receives.
Add/ Remove Text	Adds text to, or removes text from, the data it receives.
Change Emulation	Tells the tasks that follow it on a given branch to use a different emulation to format the data they receive. This is only necessary when the emulation chosen along with the sample data file is no longer adequate (because new—differently structured—data was received via a secondary input task, for instance).
Create VDX	Merges the data it receives with a PlanetPress Design document and generates a VDX document.
Database Splitter	Splits database files into smaller data files.
Decompress	Decompresses the files it receives.
Digital Imaging	Typically merges the data file it receives with a PlanetPress Design document to generate an image file (PDF, JPEG, TIFF, *etc.*). Although Digital Imaging action tasks and PlanetPress Image output tasks are very much alike, they do not share the same set of options. One notable difference between both types of tasks is that, contrary to PlanetPress Image output tasks, Digital Imaging action tasks will not be considered complete until the resulting image file has been fully generated, thus forcing PlanetPress Watch/Server to wait before performing the following task.
Digital Signature	Adds a digital signature to the PDF file created by the previous action task.
Download to Printer	Prepares the files it receives so that they can be stored on the hard drive of the printers to which they will be sent. Note that the actual sending is performed by an output task, such as a Printer Queue output task. To download image files to a printer, use Send Images to Printer output tasks (see below), which provide image processing options.
Emulated Data Splitter	Splits emulated data files into smaller data files.
External Program	Starts an executable program (allows the use of parameters).
Generic Splitter	Splits large data files into smaller data files, typically a whole run of invoices into individual invoices. Note that using the more specific splitters (Database Splitter, Emulated Data Splitter, In Stream Splitter, and XML Splitter) may be simpler.
In Stream Splitter	Splits non emulated data files into smaller data files.
Load External File	Loads an extrenal file as the new data stream.
Open XSLT	Rearranges the data present in an XML file.

Name	Function
PlanetPress Database	This input task gathers input data by connecting to a database, making a query and retrieving a table of records. In PlanetPress Watch/Server, a process is typically started when data is available at the source location of its initial input task. Since PlanetPress Database input tasks cannot count on data being available at a source location, but must rather perform a query to get data, they cannot be used as initial input tasks. You can, on the other hand, place a PlanetPress Database input task right below a Create File input task (see Create File (Page 132)).
PrintForm	Performs address cleaning and sorting functions provided by PrintForm, a third-party application from FirstLogic.
PrintShop Mail	Typically merges the data file it receives with a PrintShop Mail document.
Rename	Renames the file it receives. Data selections and variables can be used to make the renamed files easier to identify.
Run Script	Runs the script it contains. The Script Editor can be used to edit the script.
Search and Replace	Searches and replaces content in the data file.
Send Images to Printer	Performs image processing functions on the image files it receives, and prepares them so that they can be stored on the hard drive of the printers to which they will be sent. Note that the actual sending is performed by an output task, such as a Printer Queue output task.
Send to Folder	Sends files to a folder.
Set Job Infos and Variables	Lets you set variables that can be used by other tasks or by PlanetPress Design documents.
Standard Filter	Standardizes the ASCII code by automatically filtering out any HP escape characters.
Translator	Changes the encoding of the data.
Windows Print Converter	Converts Windows print files into special XML files and into standard Line Printer text files.
XML Splitter	Splits XML files files into smaller data files.

Conditional Nodes

A process can include any number of nodes that branch out in multiple branches. You typically create one branch for each output that you want PlanetPress Watch/Server to generate. If you want to generate a printout, an email and a fax for each client in your database, you would probably use a process that includes three branches. But what do you do if some records in your database have no fax number or email address in them? You use a process that includes conditional nodes, that channel the process in one of two directions. The process in the example below includes three output tasks, but only generates a single output. It first tries to send an email. If it can, the whole process is stopped. If it cannot, it then tries to send a fax. If it can, the process stops. If it cannot, as a last resort, it produces a printout.

A) PlanetPress Watch receives each client record as an LPD input. B) The condition set in this node determines whether PlanetPress Watch sends an email to the client or if it goes to the next node. C) The condition set in this node determines whether PlanetPress Watch sends a fax to the client or if it prints the statement out on paper. D) This last task is only performed if both of the above conditions are false.

The following table lists condition types that may be used in PlanetPress Watch/Server processes.

Name	Function
File Name Condition	Compares the original name of the file travelling down the process branch to the name entered in the condition.
File Size Condition	The condition compares the size of the file handed down by the previous task to the file size (256 kilobytes, for instance) entered in the condition.
SNMP Condition	Checks the state of a printer. The fact that a specific printer may be off-line or out of paper, for instance, will route the process onto the true or false side of the conditional branch.
Text Condition	Searches the file handed down by the previous task for the string entered in the condition. Various operators, such as 'is found' or 'is equal to', may be used.
Time of Day Condition	Routes the data file depending on the day and time (based on the local system clock) set in the condition.

Related topics:

- Configurations and Processes (Page 5)
- The Configuration and its Processes (Page 9)

2.1.8 More on PlanetPress Suite Services

What are services, and what services are available in PlanetPress Suite?

Services are programs that run in the background and automatically perform tasks that often do not require any user interaction. If a faxing program is installed on your computer, for instance, and if you set it to receive faxes automatically, then this program sets its own fax reception service to listen to the telephone line and to automatically answer calls, establish a connection with the distant fax and receive the fax transmission.

Although you can manually start and stop any service running on your computer, most of the basic services used by the system are started and stopped automatically. In the case of PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools and their related services, you typically use a command included in your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program to start and stop most services. Opening and closing your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program has no effect on these services.

Like users, who must identify themselves to log on and use a computer, services must use an account to be granted the permission to use the system's resources and objects. This information is included in the service's configuration and most services use the 'Local System' account, which is granted access to all the system's resources. A specific user account may be selected to customize permissions. For more information on services and system permissions, refer to Windows documentation.

The first time you start your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program, a dialog box is displayed to let you select an account. The account you select will be associated with all the services used by PlanetPress Watch/Server (with the exception of the PlanetPress Suite Messenger service). Note that this setting may be changed at any time.

Tasks Requiring Other Services

PlanetPress Watch/Server is designed to run continuously and to perform all input tasks, if the two following conditions are met:

- The process that includes the task is enabled (PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration gives you the option to enable or disable each process as desired).
- The process is currently scheduled to run.

A process really starts when its initial input task is performed, or in other words, when data is captured and channeled down the process.

The PlanetPress Watch/Server service can perform some tasks, such as taking files from a local folder, on its own. For other tasks, though, it requires the help of other services. To perform a Serial Capture input task, for example, it must use the Serial Capture service. If that service is not running, then PlanetPress Watch/Server cannot perform the task and therefore generates an error.

The PlanetPress Watch/Server service produces a standardized batch log to track the processes it runs. The log lists processing tasks performed, and any problems with the PlanetPress Watch/Server processes that occur.

Input Services

Input services are used to pull in data files. The input services used by PlanetPress Watch/Server are:

- LPD (Line Printer Daemon) Input service: Inputs data sent from an LPR client. The LPD/LPR printing protocol is a common way to send print jobs that, in turn, use the TCP/IP protocol to communicate through the network.
- Serial Input service: Monitors a single serial port for incoming data. Note that all Serial input tasks use the same serial port (set in the user options of the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program).
- Telnet Input service: Monitors multiple telnet ports for incoming data. Note that each Telnet input task has its own telnet port number (set in each task).
- HTTP/SOAP Server service: Monitors web pages and web sites as well as SOAP servers.

Note that all input services used by PlanetPress Watch/Server run under the same account.

Output Services

Output services are used to output jobs. The output services used by PlanetPress Watch/Server are:

- FTP Output service: Places output jobs on a server via the FTP protocol.
- LPR (Line Printer Requester) Output service: Sends jobs to an LPD server or LPD compatible printers. The LPD/LPR printing protocol is a common way to send print jobs that, in turn, use the TCP/IP protocol to communicate through the network.
- PlanetPress Image: Outputs jobs as PDF files or in a variety of image formats. You can also use PlanetPress Image to archive and/or email the files it creates. You can use PlanetPress Search to search the PDF files PlanetPress Image creates. You can install multiple instances of the PlanetPress Image service on your network, and have PlanetPress Watch/Server send jobs to one or more of these instances. Each instance of PlanetPress Image can generate PDFs or images and dispatch them from the host on which it runs.
- PlanetPress Fax: Outputs jobs as faxes. You use PlanetPress Fax as an interface to WinFax PRO or Windows Fax, to send faxes you create from documents. You can install multiple instances of the PlanetPress Fax service on your network, and have PlanetPress Watch/Server send jobs to one or more of these instances. Each instance of PlanetPress Fax can generate faxes and dispatch them from the host on which it runs, using a local faxing program, such as WinFax PRO, Captaris RightFax or Windows Fax.

Note that all output services used by PlanetPress Watch/Server run under the same account.

Related topics:

- The Nature of PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools
  (Page 4)
- Configurations and Processes (Page 5)

2.1.9 PlanetPress Design and PlanetPress Workflow Tools

How do I use the variable content documents I create in PlanetPress Design ?

As you know, PlanetPress Design is used to create variable-content documents, or if you will, documents meant to be merged with variable data before being printed.

People who use PlanetPress Design on a standalone basis (without a PlanetPress Workflow Tool) can only install and run their variable-content documents on their printers. When one of those printers receives a data file that begins with a trigger (see Triggers (Page 0)), it starts by merging the data with a variable-content document and then prints the resulting document.

People who use both PlanetPress Design and a PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool, on the other hand, have more options. Like standalone PlanetPress Design users, they can let the printer do the processing and the printing, but they can also let their PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool do the merging and then store or send the resulting document in various ways or via various output devices or programs.

To install documents created with PlanetPress Design on a printer or to use them with PlanetPress Watch/ Server, you must use commands available from the PlanetPress Design File menu.

A) The PlanetPress Design command used to send a document to a printer. B) The PlanetPress Design command used to send a document to a PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool.

Whether you install a document on a printer or send it to a PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool has a number of implications:

- Documents sent to printers (known as printer-resident documents) can be used for printer-based output tasks: PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools send only the data and the appropriate trigger to the printer where everything takes place. Since only the data and the trigger travel across the network to the printer, this method generates less network traffic. Note that to use printer-resident documents with PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools, you must use your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program to let PlanetPress Design know which documents have been send to which printers.
- Documents sent to PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools can be used for various types of output tasks. These documents may be run using the **Optimized PostScript Stream** option (merged with the data on the host itself before being sent to a printer or to a component that prints it to a file, such as PlanetPress Image) and sent via various means, such as an Email program or a fax machine, for example. Documents sent to a PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool installation are automatically added to the list of documents displayed in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program.

Since PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools give you the choice to run PlanetPress Design documents at the printer level or at the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool installation level, various output tasks include an option to indicate just where you want the merging to take place.

Wherever you choose to run any given PlanetPress Design document, you should always make sure that everything the document needs to run correctly, such as graphics referenced within the document, is directly available. If the document runs at the printer level, then these resources must be available on the printer's hard disk. If the document runs at the computer level, the resources must be available on the computer's hard disk or on the network.

Related topics:

- The Origins of PlanetPress Watch
- The Nature of PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools

2.1.10 Data

What is variable content and where can I use it in PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools?

The idea behind PlanetPress Design and PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools is to use documents designed to contain variable-content and to couple them with data coming from various sources in order to create fully formatted documents that can then be made available on a variety of supports (any PostScript printer or fax, for instance).

Data enters PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools via input tasks and can be used in a variety of tasks, from Printer Queue Output tasks, where the data is simply printed, to more complex Condition tasks, where it can be used to determine the outcome of complete processes. You can use a Text Condition task, for instance, to search for specific characters that can then be used to determine whether to send an email or a fax to a client.

The condition determines the outcome of the process. In this example, an @ character found on the fifth line of data indicates that the client file contains an email address, and the document is e-mailed rather then faxed.

Data can also be changed using the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools. You can use an Action task to perform search and replace operations on the data, to change the data emulation, or the data character set.

When data is pulled in via an input task it is stored in an internal data file, called a job file, that is handed down from task to task. Data can originate from a variety of sources and come in a variety of formats. For example input sources might be UNIX systems dispatching print jobs or various types of databases which are queried. Examples of formats are plain ASCII files, CSV files, and database files through any ODBC compatible data source.

Note that null characters present in the data may not be displayed properly when using the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program, and that they may also be printed differently by different printers. To ensure consistency, you should consider filtering out such characters.

You add data selections to tasks using the same Data Selector and emulation types as in PlanetPress Design (with the exception of User Defined emulations, which are not available in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools). A scaled-down version of the Data Selector, called the File Viewer, can also be used when you don't need an emulation.

You can also change the emulation during the course of the process by adding a Change Emulation action task. You might do this, for example, if you are retrieving data files from multiple sources in a single PlanetPress Suite process. For example a print job sent from a UNIX system may require Line printer emulation, while a Comma Separated Value file retrieved via FTP may require CSV emulation.

About Binary Data

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools are designed to process text files (files that contain bytes of value 4, 8 to 13, 32 to 126 and 128 to 255). Results are not guaranteed when tasks are used to process binary files.

Data and Emulation in PlanetPress Design and PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools

Emulations are like filters that can be used to read the data. When you create a document in PlanetPress Design, you choose a sample data file and specify the emulation to use for the chosen data. The emulation setting you choose will typically always be associated with that document. If you choose a CSV (comma separated values) file and specify the corresponding emulation, for instance, commas encountered in the data will typically be considered as value separators.

Every PlanetPress Design document is associated with an emulation that allows it to read the data correctly and thus to perform the merging process successfully. When a PlanetPress Design document created for data formatted using the line printer emulation receives data files formatted using the CSV emulation, for instance, the results are less than perfect. So whatever processing takes place in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools, the data always remains in its original format.

Change Emulation Tasks

Why would you want to add a Change Emulation action task in a PlanetPress Suite process? You may need to do this, for instance, if your process includes a secondary input task.

When you choose a sample data file and an emulation in your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program, you are in fact doing two related but very different things:

- You are loading data that will be used as test data to help you create your process in your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program.
- You are telling the tasks in your PlanetPress Suite process how the data included in the files they will receive is structured.

So if you add a secondary input task that pulls in data that is not structured like the data pulled in by the initial input task, you must add a Change Emulation action task to tell *the tasks that follow it* how the new data is structured.

A) This secondary input task receives data that is not structured in the same way as the sample data used to create the process. B) To tell the following tasks on this branch that the data they will be processing does not use the same emulation as the one that was specified when the sample data was chosen, a Change Emulation action task is added. C) This task will use the emulation specified in the task that precedes it to structure the data before performing its search and replace operation.

Bear in mind that each task's ability to find data within a data file is based on the predictability of the data structure. If a task includes a data selection, for instance, the selection's coordinates will only find the correct data if the data structure is correct.

The Sample Data File and Debug Mode

When you create a process in your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program, you typically use a data file that is an exact representation of the files that your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool will actually receive when it runs your configuration. This sample data file should also be large enough to cover a variety of cases. This data will help you create tasks, make data selections (see below) and debug processes.

Stabilizing the data is a complex procedure in PlanetPress Watch/Server because the data file can be altered in real-time in the data stream at runtime. PlanetPress Suite Workflow Toosl include debugging tools for this, including the ability to interactively make data selections from a sample data file as it is being processed by the tasks you added.

You use a sample data file to represent the data file entering the process at runtime. Since the data file can be altered by various PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools tasks as it travels through a process, it can be difficult to make accurate data selections. But when you run your process step by step in Debug mode, you can see the data changing as it is handed down from task to task. So when you open a task that includes a data selection, you are able to see the actual data it receives, and the exact data found at the data selection's coordinates.

Introduction to Data Selections

A data selection could be compared to an address. It indicates a location within a data file using coordinates. The big difference between street addresses and data selections, is that street addresses almost always have the same format (civic number, street, city, etc.), while data selections can have various formats based on the data structure.

Fortunately, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program includes a tool called the Data Selector that helps you make data selections. The Data Selector does two things:

- It uses the current emulation (either the emulation chosen when the sample data file was selected, or the one chosen in the last Change Emulation action task appearing above the current task) to format the data.

- It displays the formatted data to let you make selections easily using the mouse pointer.

You use the same Data Selector as you use in PlanetPress Design when you add data selections to tasks using an emulation.

Related topics:

-
-
-

2.1.11 Data File and Job File

What is the difference between data files and job files?

Whichever source it may come from, a serial port, an e-mail message, or an LPR request, for instance, and whatever its format, data entering a PlanetPress Suite process via an input task is always referred to as a data file. Job file is a more general term, that can refer to data files as well as other types of files traveling through a process. Image files, for example, can be passed from task to task in order to be downloaded to a printer. So files traveling within a process are mostly referred to as job files.

A) Job file name as displayed in the Object Inspector.

By default, job file names are generated using the %f variable. As you can see in the following illustration, you may change the way PlanetPress Watch/Server names job files by using any combination of static characters, PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool variables and Job info variables. You could for instance enter " Process_%w_Job_%f " (without the quotation marks) in the File name box to add the process name in the name generated by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools.

A) PlanetPress Suite workflow tools variables. B) Job info variables. C) Local and global variables.

A single job file can be the source of multiple job files. This is the case, for example, when a process includes multiple branches, as each branch is given a duplicate copy of the job file (see Configurations, Processes and Flowcharts (Page 0)). This is also the case when a job file is split into multiple smaller files by a Splitter action task, for instance (see About Splitter Action Tasks (Page 0)).

It is important to note that job files may be used as a helpful *debugging resource* (see Using the Object Inspector (Page 0)).

Related topics:

2.1.12 Job File Names and Output File Names

How does job and file naming work within dynamic PlanetPress Suite processes?

When an input task sends a new data file down a process, it gives it an internal file name referred to as the job file name (associated with the %f variable). The new job file typically keeps the same name until the end of the process.

- If the job file comes to a branch in the process, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools make a copy of the job file and give the new file a new job file name.
- If the job file is processed by a splitter action task, the task typically creates a number of new files which are all given new job file names.

Since these files are generated and managed by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools, you should not actually pay too much attention to their names.

Many output tasks, on the other hand, let you determine exactly how you want the files they generate to be named. In the case of Send to Folder output tasks, for example, output files are saved under their job file names by default (using the variable %f), but you may use a static (**MyOutput.txt**, for example) or variable name (**%O_Invoices**, for instance) of your choosing.

A) By default, in the properties dialog box of Send to Folder output tasks, the File name text box contains a variable that uses the current job file name as the output file name. B) If you change the value of the File name box to %O_Invoice.txt, the output file will have a name made up of the original file name, with its extension truncated, to which the static text "_Invoice.txt" will be appended (txt will thus become the file name extension).

Variables such as *%o* (original file name) bring up the issue of file overwriting. If the process receives two source files with the same name, the second output file may overwrite the first one. This may be what you want, but otherwise you may consider using another variable, such as in *%u* (unique 13-character string).

When choosing naming schemes for output files, consider the following:

- For the benefit of users who must identify files, be it in a folder or on a printer queue, consider using names that are as meaningful and precise as possible.
- Some devices or applications may use file name extensions to know what to do with incoming files.

Since variable properties can be entered in the boxes where you specify the folder and file names, you can use variables, data selections and static text. You could, for example, use the following: *ClientID_@(1,1,1,1,14,KeepCase,Trim)_StatMonth_%m*.

One last consideration regarding output file names has to do with standard JPEG and TIFF files generated by PlanetPress Image. When an output job contains multiple pages, multiple JPEG or TIFF files are generated (one image per file), each one identified by a sequence number appended to its name (this is managed by

your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool). A three page job to be called *Invoice*, for example, will generate three JPEGs or TIFFs called *Invoice0*, *Invoice1* and *Invoice2*. Note that this does not apply to multiple TIFFs, which can include multiple images in a single file.

Finally, note that you can change the name of a previously named file using a Rename action task (see Action Tasks (Page 0)).

Related topics:

- Data File and Job File (Page 0)

2.1.13 Error Handling Tools

What error handling tools and strategies can I use when I build PlanetPress Watch/Server processes?

PlanetPress Watch/Server includes various error detection, warning and handling options. These are divided into the following categories:

- About Error Handling (Page 0)
- *SNMP condition tasks* can check the status of printers (or other SNMP compatible devices) and reroute jobs along different branches of a process. For example, an SNMP condition task might check if a printer was out of paper or toner (see "SNMP Condition Properties" in the Reference Help).
- When a Text Condition task is used to test numeric values, the *numeric error option* sets the exact behavior desired when an error is encountered.
- *Notification messages* can warn you in a variety of situations, such as when you are about to perform an action that has an impact on the current process or configuration.
- *PlanetPress Watch/Server logs* can be configured to contain very little information as well as every system event with all the available details.
- PlanetPress Watch/Server can *back up outgoing jobs* when an output service cannot properly dispatch the job to its destination. For example, consider a PlanetPress Watch/Server process that outputs jobs to an FTP server. The FTP output task first sends the job files to an FTP output folder and then posts them to the appropriate FTP server. If the FTP service fails to send a job from the output folder to an FTP server, a backup of the job can be kept. This also includes comprehensive error options for the PlanetPress Fax and PlanetPress Image services, where warnings can be sent to administrators when errors occur.

Furthermore, PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration's Debug mode is a powerful tool that can be used to resolve many of the errors that hide in your processes before your configuration is sent to the PlanetPress Watch/Server service (see Debugging a Process (Page 0)).

Related topics:

- Error Handling (Page 0)

2.1.14 PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools and Printing

What concepts are involved in printing?

To print a document using the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools, you need two basic things: a *printer queue* and a *Printer Queue output task*, both of which are created and defined using PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program. Documents created using PlanetPress Design are also typically used in their printing process.

A) The output file generated by this Printer Queue output task is sent to selected printer queues. B) Available PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools queues.

The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program lets you create four types of printer output queues, for local or remote printing.

Local printing:

- Windows output queues let you send jobs to a local printer.
- Send to Folder output queues let you save jobs to a local or network folder from which they can be picked up and printed.

Remote printing:

- FTP output queues let you upload jobs to an FTP site from which they can be picked up and printed.
- LPR output queues let you send print jobs to remote printers via TCP/IP using the LPR/LPD protocol.

Note that a single Printer Queue output task can send jobs to all four queue types.

PlanetPress Design Documents and Printer Queues

Using PlanetPress Watch/Server, you can print raw data or complete documents (data merged with PlanetPress Design variable-content documents). PlanetPress Design documents may be present on either or both of the following locations: on the computers running PlanetPress Watch/Server, on local or remote printers.

A) PlanetPress Design documents that have been sent to the computer running PlanetPress Watch/Server. B) PlanetPress Design resident documents. These are documents that are known to have been sent to at least one printer by PlanetPress Design. C) PlanetPress Design documents associated with a printer queue. These documents are available on the computer running PlanetPress Watch/Server, but they may not be available on the printer associated with the printer queue. D) PlanetPress Design resident documents that have been associated with a printer queue. These documents must be available on the printer associated with the printer queue.

PlanetPress Watch/Server provides you with three main printing scenarios:

1.	**Send output data to be printed as is**

- PlanetPress Watch/Server sends a file containing only the data to the selected queue.

2.	**Send output data to be merged with a document on the printer**

• PlanetPress Watch/Server sends one of two things:

• A file that contains only the data to the selected printer queue. The document with which the data must be merged must be present on the printer's hard disk, otherwise printing will fail.

• A file that contains the data and the document to the selected printer queue. Since the data and the document with which it must be merged are both sent to the printer, printing should never fail.

• In both cases, the document+data merging process takes place inside the printer.

3.	**Send output data already merged with a document**

• PlanetPress Watch/Server sends a file that contains the document already merged with the data to the selected printer queue. The document+data merging process therefore never takes place inside the printer.

Printer Queues

PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queues are "logical printers" you set up in the Configuration Components area of PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration (see Configuration Components Area (Page 43)). They might represent a local or network printer (Windows output or LPR output), or even a folder (Send to Folder output) or an FTP location (FTP output) where files to be printed are to be deposited.

Wherever a print job is sent, it is always sent in the same format that would be used if it were sent to a physical local printer. Jobs stored in folders or FTP locations may then be printed automatically or in batch via other processes, such as PlanetPress Watch/Server Folder Capture input tasks.

Since each queue has its own properties, you may create multiple queues for the same printer. By creating "customized" queues, you can use specific job commands that add an extra form feed, that switches to a different tray, or that turns duplex printing on or off.

Examples of job commands include line feeds, carriage returns, end-of- job commands (see Printer Control Characters (Page 0)), as well as printer-specific commands such as turning on 2-up printing or stapling, or changing the printer output tray.

Printer Queue Outputs

Printer Queue outputs are tasks added to the data stream in PlanetPress Watch/Server processes and include one or more printer queues to which jobs are sent. You may associate a Printer Queue output with multiple printer queues, for example, to print multiple copies or to divide the printing load among multiple printers.

Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS)

Introduction

The Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS) allows end-users to print directly to the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools from any Windows application, by using the familiar **File|Print** option. At the other end, PlanetPress Office and PlanetPress Production specifically can capture the incoming stream and convert it internally into a PDF file along with its metadata.

Although it is available with every PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools, this feature becomes even more useful in environments where the Document Input emulation is available (with PlanetPress Office or PlanetPress Production).

Install a Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS)

The Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS) is automatically installed during the PlanetPress Suite setup, along with a default Windows Printer Queue called *PlanetPress Printer*.

Install a Windows Printer Queue using the Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS)

A Windows Printer Queue using the Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS) can be installed from the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools WinQueue Input plugin properties.

Creating a new Windows printer queue from any PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools:

1. Start your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program.
2. Insert a **WinQueue Input** plugin.
3. In the WinQueue Input plugin properties, click **New**.
4. Enter a **Name** for the printer queue.
5. Click **OK**.

Every new Windows printer queue using the Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS) is shared by default. Once such a shared queue is created, end-users can install it on their own computer by going through the same steps they would when installing a new remote printer in their Operating System. By default, connecting to a shared printer will automatically result in the Objectif Lune Printer Driver being downloaded to the connecting host.

Printer Properties setup

The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools WinQueue Input task can be configured to set a Windows printer queue using Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS) to produce one of 3 different types of datafiles: EMF, PostScript, or PDF. Note that PlanetPress Watch can only produce EMF or PostScript files.

Possible printer properties settings, along with the datafile type it will produce:

Spool Print Jobs in EMF Format:

- This will create an EMF datafile.
- This format is usally reserved for use with the Windows Print Converter action plugin.
- This format can be obtained using PlanetPress Watch, Office or Production.

Spool Print Jobs in RAW Format:

- This will create a PostScript datafile when the option **Create Composed Document Stream (with Medatada)** is *unchecked*.
  - This format can be obtained using PlanetPress Watch, Office or Production.
- This will create a PDF datafile when the option **Create Composed Document Stream (with Medatada)** is *checked*.
  - This format can be obtained using PlanetPress Office or PlanetPress Production.

By default, the **Create Composed Document Stream** option is:

- Checked if the incoming stream has been produced with the Objectif Lune Printer Driver.
- Unchecked if the incoming stream comes from some other PostScript Driver.
- Grayed out and unchecked if the incoming stream is not PostScript.

Data Capture from the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools

Once a shared Windows printer queue using Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS) is installed on both the server and the client sides, data capture can be achieved the same way as with any other Windows printer queues.

Data Capture from the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools:

1. Open your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program.
2. Insert a **new process**.
3. Select **WinQueue Input** from the **Plugin Bar** and insert it in the new process.
4. In the **WinQueue Input** properties, select a Windows print queue using the Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS) from the drop-down list.

5. Click **OK**.
6. Send the configuration and start your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service.
7. Start the windows application from which you want to capture data.
8. Open your selected document.
9. Click **File | Print**.
10. Choose the same Windows print queue as in step 4.

Note that steps 6-8 can be performed at any time, even if PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production is not yet started. This is because every Windows printer queue using Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS) is paused by default. Once the service has started, it captures every queued job.

PDF Creation Parameters

PDF files retrieved from a Windows print queue using Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS) have the following properties:

- PDF 1.4
- Optimized PDF (subject to change)
- No down-sampling of images

These settings are pre-configured and cannot be changed by the user.

About Metadata

Metadata files are files containing information on the job itself rather than containing the job per se. A job sent to the Objectif Lune Printer Driver (PS) creates its own metadata, allowing users to retrieve relevant information, such as, for instance, the time and date the print request was sent. For more on this, see the **Metada** documentation pages.

Duplicating or Sharing the Printing Load

In PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration, you may associate a single Printer Queue output task with multiple Printer Queues. If you do so, you have the option of using load balancing or not (see Load Balancing (Page 0)).

Related topics:

- Printer Queues and Documents (Page 0)

2.1.15 The PlanetPress Suite Workflow

What steps are involved in the PlanetPress Suite workflow?

The PlanetPress Suite workflow involves numerous steps. Because of the versatility of the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools, and the diverse communication situations it addresses, each PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool is unique.

The following workflow is meant as a starting point to successfully using a PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool.

Gathering Information and Resources for Creating PlanetPress Processes

The PlanetPress Watch/Server workflow should begin by gathering all the information and resources you need to create PlanetPress Watch/Server processes.

This could include a combination of the following:

- Creating variable content documents in PlanetPress Design and sending them to PlanetPress Watch/Server or to printers, as resident documents.
- Getting all the information and permissions related to the peripherals, user accounts and addresses you will use in your processes. This may include IP addresses, computer ports, email login information and any other information needed to configure your PlanetPress Watch/Server input, output and action tasks, as well as some conditions. SNMP conditions, for example, require that you specify printer community names. This may imply the creation of new communities specifically for PlanetPress Watch/Server.
- Sketching out the business or communication flow and tasks you want to accomplish through PlanetPress Watch/Server processes.

Creating and Editing Configuration Components

The basic building used to create a PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration are displayed in the Configurations Components area.

- **Processes**: All the tasks you require may be included in a single process or split up in as many processes as you will. You can think of processes as groups of tasks that share common properties (schedule related considerations mostly). Tasks from certain processes may exchange data with tasks from other processes. Note that processes can have their own **Local variables**, which are only available to their process.
- **Startup processes**: Processes that run only once before every other process in a given configuration.
- **Subprocesses**: Processes called by other processes and frequently executing redundant tasks shared by different processes.
- **Global variables**: variables associated with the current configuration, useable by any task of any process within this configuration file.
- **Documents**: Variable content documents, created in PlanetPress Design, may be available on the computer running PlanetPress Watch/Server, on printers, or both. Whenever a PlanetPress Design document is sent to a PlanetPress Watch/Server installation, it is added to the list of documents. Resident documents must be added to the list of documents manually, because PlanetPress Watch/Server installations have no way of knowing which documents are present on which devices.
- **Printer queues**: Virtual printers that can be associated either with physical printers, with FTP locations or with folders where print jobs are to be stored. Those documents associated with a printer queue must be available either locally or on the device that will be used to produce the output (a physical printer or a PlanetPress Watch/Server session running on a different computer).

A) Multiple processes in one configuration. B) PlanetPress Design documents that are typically only available on printers. C) Locally available PlanetPress Design documents. D) Printer queues, some of which are grouped. E) PlanetPress Design document associated with a printer queue.

To start working in PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration, you must have at least one process. Additional processes, as well as documents and printer queues may be added as you are building your entire configuration.

Creating and Developing Processes

A process is a sort of flowchart that begins with a data input and that ends with either a single or multiple outputs. Most processes also include various types of actions and conditions, as well as comments.

- Input tasks take in data from given locations or connections.
- Action tasks perform various kinds of data processing.
- Output tasks generate documents in a variety of forms.
- Branches are used to duplicate the data and to pass it on to multiple tasks.
- Conditions are used to determine the route followed by the data based on specific conditions.

You can set up and edit multiple processes in a single PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration session. Processes are displayed graphically as nodes—each node representing an input, action, or output task—in the PlanetPress Watch/Server Process area.

A) Processes. B) Selected process displayed in PlanetPress Watch/Server Process area. C) Input task. D) Condition. Data travels down this branch (and not the main branch) only if the condition is true. E) Action tasks. F) Output tasks. G) Branch. Data travels down this branch as well as the main branch.

Startup processes are processes that run only once before every other process in a given configuration. They can be used to perform operations that need to be completed once before the configuration can actually be run, such as to map network drives.

Subprocesses are processes called by other processes and frequently executing redundant tasks shared by different processes.

Once you have created all your tasks and organized them using processes, your PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration is ready. When you send it to PlanetPress Watch/Server, it is immediately applied (if PlanetPress Watch/Server is running, of course) and all its tasks are performed.

If you create a Folder Capture input task that takes any file it finds in the root folder of one of your hard disks, then PlanetPress Watch/Server will try to remove all the files located in that folder, including all the system and hidden files.

Adding Inputs

An input task captures data and passes it on to other tasks that process it or that generate output.

Inputs are *watchedlocations*, typically folders, ports, IP addresses, email addresses, etc. Locations are polled periodically based on the polling interval defined for each process.

Let us imagine a process that has a polling interval of 120 seconds:

- When the process becomes on schedule, PlanetPress Watch/Server performs its initial input task and polls the input location.
  - If it doesn't find any data files, it waits 120 seconds and tries again.
  - If it finds data files, it removes them from the input location and processes them. Once it has finished processing those files, it polls the input location a second time. If it finds new data files, it removes them from the input location and processes them. Once it has finished processing that second batch of files, it polls the input location a third time. If it finds still new data files, it removes them from the input location and processes them. The cycle goes on until PlanetPress Watch/Server polls the input location and finds no new files. When this is the case, PlanetPress Watch/Server waits 120 seconds and tries again.
- When the process becomes off schedule, if PlanetPress Watch/Server is currently polling an input location, it will keep polling it until it can't find any new files in it. When this is the case, the process' initial input task will stop being performed, but any other task included in the process will keep being performed until all the data in the pipeline has been processed.

Two input tasks do not follow the convention of pulling in data from outside sources:

- Create File input tasks generate job files regardless of the presence or absence of data files, since they have no input location. They are therefore performed like clockwork at every polling interval and consistently generate new job files.
- Error Bin input tasks, which are used for error management, are only present at the beginning of error processes. They pull in jobs that failed to be correctly generated by tasks included in other processes.

As you know, all processes begin with a primary input task, which typically brings in the data that will be used throughout the process. To add flexibility, PlanetPress Watch/Server lets you add multiple input tasks to your processes, to bring in new data as required. Any input task that is not the initial input task is referred to as a secondary input task.

Note that when a secondary input task is present on a given branch, be it the main branch or any other branch, it *replaces* the data travelling down that branch with new data (see Initial and Secondary Input Tasks (Page 0)).

For more information on inputs, see About Input Tasks (Page 0) and Available Input Tasks (Page 0).

Adding Outputs

Outputs are *delivery locations*, typically printers, folders, FTP locations, email addresses, etc. Jobs sent to a given location may include additional elements, such as other files, attachments or job information variables. Output tasks can generate print jobs, but also PDF files, faxes, image files, etc.

Since the data travelling down a given process may be split (using Splitter action tasks), copied (using branches), or routed one way or another (using conditions), one process may include many outputs.

Adding Actions

Actions comprise a variety of tasks mostly performed on the data or using the data. If the action tasks provided by PlanetPress Watch do not perform the exact actions you need, you can use Script or External Program action tasks to create additional actions using any compatible scripting or programming language.

PlanetPress Watch processes can include the following action tasks:

- Splitter
- Add Document

- Add/Remove Text
- Change Emulation
- Create VDX
- Digital Imaging
- Digital Signature
- Download to Printer
- External Program
- Open XSLT
- PlanetPress Database
- PrintForm
- Rename
- Run Script
- Search and Replace
- Send Images to Printer
- Send to Folder
- Set Job Info
- Standard Filter
- Translator

Adding Conditions

Conditions are process crossroads. When a process comes to a condition, it must determine whether to send the data handed down from the previous task to one of two following tasks. The data then keeps going down the chosen branch.

For more information on actions, see Using Conditions (Page 0).

Adding Comments

Comments are simply notes that you can tag on your processes in PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration to provide explanations or as reminders. Add comments to facilitate your work as you are creating your processes and configurations, as well as to help others understand them.

Debugging your PlanetPress Suite Process

As you are creating a process and adding tasks to that process, you may want to see just what your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool will be doing to the data when it runs your configuration. To do this, you use the debug mode.

You typically begin by using step-by-step debugging. This way, tasks can be performed one by one and results may be checked each step of the way (temporary files are stored in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool's **Debug** folder). When a process is complete, you can also run it from beginning to end in a single click (temporary files are deleted as the process runs and only the outputs can be used to verify the validity of the entire process). Note that the Messages area also provides useful information in Debug mode.

Debug mode can help you fine tune tasks, for example, by making data selections in dynamic context, as the data is being altered by other tasks included in the process.

Since your sample data file (see The Sample Data File and Debug Mode (Page 24)) is a good representation of the actual data your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool will be processing, your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration uses that same file when in Debug mode. Note that it creates copies of that file and that you therefore do not have to worry about it being removed from its original location or changed in any way.

Once you have created and fully debugged all your processes, you are ready to go on to the last step in the workflow: sending your configuration to your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool so that it can start being applied when that application is restarted.

Sending your Configuration to the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Service

The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration saves entire configurations in the form of a single file. Like any other file, configuration files may be saved and reopened, as well as rename as desired. Simply saving a configuration has no effect on the configuration actually used by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool when it is started. To change any currently active configuration, you must use the **Send Configuration** command.

The **Save** command lets you save configurations under a name of your choice followed by the **.pw7** extension. The **Send Configuration** command always saves configurations under the same name: **ppwatch.cfg**. Whenever the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool is started, it uses that file as its current configuration. Bear in mind that this last command overwrites the previously used configuration.

See Sending and Running a Configuration.

Related topics:

- Configurations and Processes
- The Configuration and its Processes
- Tasks

2.1.16 Date and Time Format

What format should I use to enter dates and times?

To simplify things and to prevent errors, date and time formats have been standardized.

- Date are entered and displayed as yyyy/MM/dd (2007/06/13, for example).
- Times are entered and displayed using the 24 hour format as HH:mm:ss (3:38:54 PM, for example, is entered and displayed as 15:38:54).

2.1.17 Microsoft Outlook, Outlook Express® and MAPI

How does PlanetPress Watch/Server exchange emails with other applications?

Messaging Application Programming Interface (MAPI) is a system built into Microsoft Windows. It enables different email applications to work together to receive and distribute email. All MAPI-enabled applications can share email messages.

PlanetPress Watch/Server is compatible with extended MAPI. It uses Microsoft Outlook (or Outlook Express) to interface with email applications and thus uses local email accounts.

If you are running PlanetPress Watch/Server on Windows 2000 Service Pack 4 (SP4) or Windows XP Service Pack 2 (SP2) ,PlanetPress Watch/Server may not be able to send or receive emails using Outlook. This may happen both when this application is running or not, and may thus prevent Email input and output tasks from being performed correctly. To ensure that Email input and output tasks will always be correctly performed, use the SMTP or POP3 protocol instead.

Related topics:

- Input Tasks
- Output Tasks

3 The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration Program

This chapter centers on the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program, which you use to create and edit your configurations.

You create and configure the processes that run in your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service with your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration areas.

In this section, you learn to:

In addition, you will be able to answer the following questions:

3.1 Key Concepts

This section introduces you to the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program and explains how you can build your PlanetPress Suite configuration. It contains the following topics:

- Knowing your Way Around The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration Program Window
- Combining and Attaching Areas of the Program Window
- User Options
- Grouping Objects
- Virtual Drive Manager (Page 46)

3.1.1 Combining and Attaching Areas of the Program Window

How can I change the user interface to maximize space?

You can combine and attach the Configuration Components area, Messages area and Object Inspector into a single secondary window that can be docked to and undocked from the main PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program window (see Dock and Undock Areas of the Program Window (Page 0)).

A) PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools secondary window. The window title includes the names of every attached area. When areas are combined, the title includes only the name of the active tab. B) Object Inspector and the Message area combined. Tabs let you switch from one to the other. C) Configuration Components area attached to the Object Inspector and the Message area.

Combining and attaching areas can facilitate the management of your screen real estate. It lets you reposition multiple areas in a single operation (see Combine and Attach Areas (Page 0)).

Note that since the Process area must remain in the main PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuaration Program window, it cannot be combined and attached in this fashion.

Related topics:

- The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration Program Window (Page 37)
- Grouping Objects (Page 38)
- Combine and Attach Areas (Page 0)

3.1.2 Grouping Objects

Why group objects in the Configuration Components area?

Groups help you organize processes, documents, and printer queues. For example, you may create the Invoices, Checks and Reports groups in the Processes section and associate individual processes with each one of these groups. Note that you cannot have groups within groups. Also note that you cannot mix documents of different types within a given group. You cannot, for example, group local PlanetPress Design documents with printer-resident documents (see Group and Ungroup Objects in the Configuration Components Area (Page 0)).

A) Groups of processes, documents and printer queues.

You can also use groups to quickly assign multiple documents to multiple printer queues. By dragging a group of documents to a printer queue, you assign all the documents in the group to that queue.

Related topics:

- The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration Program Window (Page 37)
- Combining and Attaching Areas of the Program Window (Page 38)
- Group and Ungroup Objects in the Configuration Components Area (Page 0)

3.1.3 Preferences

Can I change the way the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program looks and behaves?

The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program lets you configure a variety of options, from how the application itself looks or behaves, to plugin specific options. To change your own user options, look for the **Preferences** command from the **PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button** menu.

3.1.4 The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration Program Window

What are the elements of the PlanetPress Workflow Tools Configuration Program window?

The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program has a configurable user interface, so what you see when you start this application can vary for each user. The basic user interface elements are as follows: the PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button; the Quick Access Toolbar; the Ribbon with its Tabs, Groups and Controls; the Configuration Components area; the Process area; the Plugin Bar; the Object Inspector; the Messages area and the status bar.

A) PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button. B) Quick Access Toolbar. C) Ribbon Tabs. D) Ribbon Groups. E) Ribbon Controls. F) Configuration Components area. G) Process area. H) Plugin Bar I) Object Inspector. J) Messages area. K) Status bar.

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

The first time you start your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program, these elements appear in their default position. You can dock and undock the different areas to adapt the layout of the program window to your workflow. A docked area lies flush with the surrounding areas. An undocked area overlaps other areas in the interface. You can also combine and attach areas (except for the Process area) to maximize screen space (see Combine and Attach Areas (Page 0)).

The PlanetPress Suite Button

The PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button replaces the File menu from previous versions, and provides access to the File menu options.

The Quick Access Toolbar

The PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Quick Access Toolbar is displayed, by default, on the right side of the PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button, and provides one-click shortcuts to commonly used functions and features.

You may customize the commonly used shortcuts you want by right-clicking on any element you would like to assign to the **Quick Access Toolbar** and selecting **Add to Quick Access Toolbar**. Conversely, you can remove any element by right-clicking it on the **Quick Acces Toolbar** and selecting **Remove from Quick Access Toolbar**.

The **Quick Access Toolbar** can also be displayed either above or below the PlanetPress Watch/Office/ Production Ribbon.

The PlanetPress Suite Plug-in Bar

Introduction

The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools offer a constantly increasing number of plugins, while always allowing third party plug-ins to be installed and set up to be used by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools. The PlanetPress Suite Plug-in Bar lists the available plugin in any of the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools, and is divided into categories, which users can customize at will.

A) Selected Panel B) Splitter C) Popup Indicator (to customize categories and buttons) D) Category Bar

Categories

The default categories lists plug-ins according to what type of task each achieve. Therefore, when first starting your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program, the following categories are used:

- Inputs
- Actions
- Outputs
- Data splitters
- Process logic
- Connectors

Note that an *Uncategorized* category is dynamically created if your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool finds any plug-in that would not be part of the existing Plug-in bar. User-defined plug-ins and third party application plug-ins falls into such a category.

Insert or Replace Plugins

Insert a Plug-in Node

To insert a plug-in in the process area, simply drag the plug-in from the Plug-in bar and drop it on the pipe at the desired location.

Some plug-ins may have various behvior types. Whenever this is the case, a contextual menu appears when dropping the plug-in in the process area to allow you to select the proper type.

Replace a Plug-in Node

To replace a plug-in in the process area with another one, simply drag the new plug-in from the Plug-in bar and drop it on the task to replace.

As for inserting a plug-in, some action may have various behavior types. Whenever this is the case, a contextual menu appears when dropping the plug-in in the process area to allow you to select the proper type.

Conditions and Branches

Conditions and branches must be replaced by either a condition or a branch. Dragging any other type of plug-in will be treated as an insertion.

The insertion position depends on the position of the mouse cursor when the plug-in is dropped.

Note: Some plug-in may have action and condition behviors, such as the Run Script plug-in. Whenever this is the case, a contextual menu appears when dropping the plug-in in the process area to allow you to select the proper type.

Settings & Customization

The Plug-in bar can be customized according to your needs and the plug-ins you most frequently use. To facilitate user customization, the **Splitter** control allows to expand or collapse the Plug-in bar **Panel**. Moreover, its position is saved whenever the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool is closed, thus keeping track of the current state of the Plug-in bar. For example, this Plug-in bar will keep its current layout unless the **Splitter** is used again to modified the display:

Furthermore, the Plug-in bar can be customized using the **Popup indicator** control. Customizing the Plug-in bar is mostly for third party or legacy plug-ins.

Using the contextual menu displayed by the **Popup indicator**, you can:

- Insert, delete and rename custom categories.
- Move categories up or down.
- Import third party or legacy plug-ins.
- Move plug-ins from one custom category to another; note that you cannot move default plug-ins, you can only copy them.
- Copy plug-ins from one custom category to another by holding the **CTRL** key.
- Delete plug-ins from any custom category by using the **Delete** key.
- Revert to default Plug-in bar by selecting **Reset to default**.

The PlanetPress Suite Ribbon

What toolbars are available in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration Program?

The built-in **Ribbon** and **Quick Access Toolbar** contain commands that are frequently used and convenient to keep close at hand. You can minimize the **Ribbon**, and choose the position of the **Quick Access Toolbar**, as well as the commands it displays.

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program **Ribbon** has five tabs: the **Home** tab, the **View** tab, the **Debug** tab, the **Tools** tab and the **Help** tab. Each one of these tabs contains a series of groups, each group holding a number of controls.

- The **Home** tab includes the **Clipboard**, **Processes, Variables, Documents** and **Printer Queues** groups.
  - The **Clipboard** group contains the typical Windows-based editing controls: **Cut**, **Copy**, **Paste**, **Select All**, **Delete**.
  - The **Processes** group contains workflow controls, allowing to insert new processes of any type as well as controls to converst, activate or branche processes.
  - The **Variables** group contains two controls to insert either a **Global variables** available throughout the entire configuration, or **Local variables** available to the current process only.
  - The **Documents** group contains the document controls, used to insert, refresh, update or delete documents and document instances.
  - The **Printer Queues** group contains controls to set up printer queues of any type, as well as replace any existing queues.
- The **View** tab includes the **Arrange**, **Navigate** and **Show/Hide** groups.
  - The **Arrange** group contains the **Group/Ungroup** and **Sort by Name** and **Order** controls, allowing to reorder objects in the **Configuration Components** area. It also includes the **Undo/ Redo** controls, as well as a **Rename** control, to modify a given component's name.
  - The **Navigate** group contains a **Processes** control to select any existing process of the currently loaded configuration, as well as a **Highlight** control to mark a given node, a **Zoom Out** for a quick overview of the currently selected process, and **Go to Child/Go to Parent** to move around a given process logical nodes (branches or conditions).
  - The **Show/Hide** group contains four controls to display or hide any of the four panes; the **Configuration Components** area, the **Object Inspector** pane, the **Messages Window** pane and the **Plug-in bar**.
- The **Debug** tab includes the **Data**, **Debug** and **Debug Messages** groups.
  - The **Data** group allows to associate a sample data file to the currently selected process, as well as update or replace it, and display it in its text/PDF or Hexadecimal format.
  - The **Debug** group contains the **debugger**'s controls, allowing to execute a process step by step, skipping over or ignoring certain tasks, as well as setting up breakpoints and resetting variables values. This group also includes the **Send Configuration** button, necessary to push the current configuration to the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service.
  - The **Debug Messages** group contains two controls to either **Clear** or **Save** the contents of the **Messages** pane.

- The **Tools** tab includes the **Managers**, **Services** and **Test Page** groups.
    - The **Managers** group contains:
        - The **Install PostScript Font** control allows to install a PostScript font into your PlanetPress Suite installation.
        - The **Virtual Drive Manager** control loads the PlanetPress Suite Virtual Drive.
        - The **Access Manager** control loads the Access Manager, allowing to grant/remove permissions to hosts.
        - The **Check for updates** control, used to update the current PlanetPress Suite version.
        - The **Launch Upgrade Wizard** control, used when migrating from a previous PlanetPress Suite version.
    - The **Services** group contains:
        - The **Services Status** control allows to start, pause and stop the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service.
        - The **Configure Services** control loads the *PlanetPress Suite Services* dialog to configure the user account PlanetPress Suite should use.
        - The **Service Console** control loads *PlanetPress Suite Service Console*, allowing to monitor real-time information on the configuration execution.
    - The **Test Page** group contains:
        - The **PS Test Page** control allows to print a Status Page for the selected Printer Queue. Note that if no printer queue is selected in the Configuration Components pane, the control is disabled.
        - The **Text Test Page** control allows to print a raw text test page for the selected Printer Queue. Note that if no printer queue is selected in the Configuration Components pane, the control is disabled.
- The **Help** tab includes the **Help** and **Activation** groups.
    - The **Help** group contains the **User Guide**, the **Reference Guide** and the **About** controls, used to access online documentation and version informations.
    - The **Activation** group contains the **Software Activation** and the **Printer Activation** controls, used to enter activation codes for either the software or a given device.

Configuration Components Area

The Configuration Components area displays processes, documents and PlanetPress Suite printer queues (see PlanetPress Watch/Server Printer Queues (Page 0)).
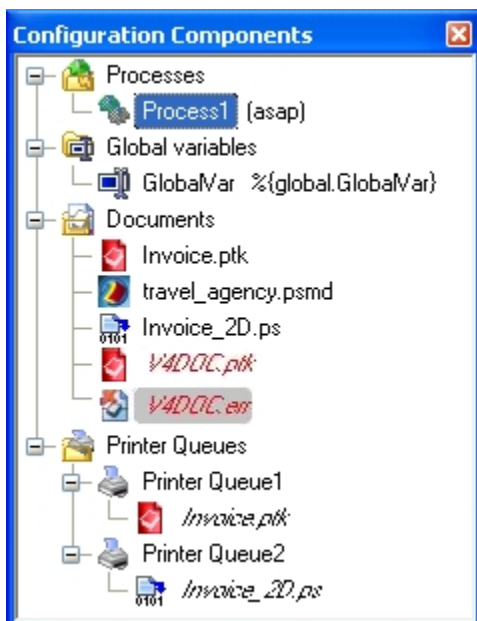
A) The Processes group. B) A current process set to run as soon as possible (ASAP).C) The Global variables group. D) A global variable. E) The Documents group. F) Documents that are either available on the local PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool workstation or on specific printers. The fourth document appears in a red, italicized font to draw your attention to the fact that it can no longer be found on the local PlanetPress Workflow Tool workstation. The fifth item listed in this group cannot be used because it contains errors. G) The Printer Queues group. H) A PlanetPress Suite printer queue. I) Documents associated with a printer queue. The second document actually resides on the printer itself.

Messages Area

The Messages area is used in Debug mode to indicate the status of your PlanetPress Suite process as the sample data file is processed and used to generate output. When your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool runs in Debug mode, the Messages area displays useful processing and error information (see Debugging a Process (Page 0) and Using the Message Area (Page 0)).

Object Inspector

The Object Inspector displays the properties of the object selected in the Configuration Components area. Document properties include printer settings. You can edit some of these properties directly from the Object Inspector.

You can change the appearance and organization of elements in the Object Inspector.

When multiple objects are selected, the Object Inspector displays their common properties, which can be edited collectively.

The Object Inspector also displays information about the Job File (see Data File and Job File (Page 25) and Using the Object Inspector (Page 0)). Seeing how files change as they travel down a process can provide valuable debugging information.

A) Job file information.

When you select a group, no information is displayed in the Object Inspector, because what is really selected is the group heading and not the items included in the group.

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration Program Process Area

This main area can never be hidden. It is made up of an invisible grid, that can be resized as required, and that holds all the tasks, branches, conditions, and comments that make up the selected process.

Process comprising a main branch, a conditional branch and five tasks (one input, two action and two output tasks).

The first task of any process, also called the initial input task, always appears in the first box in the upper left corner. When you create a new process, this first task is always followed by the default output task in the following box.

When you add a branch or condition, since PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools cannot determine which type of output task will terminate this branch, it adds an unknown task. A process is not complete until all its unknown tasks have been replaced by specific tasks.

Unknown tasks that must be defined as specific outputs.

You use the top and left rulers to resize the columns and rows that make up the Process Area's invisible grid (see).

A) Top ruler. B) Left ruler.

3.1.5 Virtual Drive Manager

Can I delete images from my virtual drive?

When you use the Send images to printer action in a given process, you have the option of, at the same time, sending the images to the virtual drive (a local storage folder used by PlanetPress Suite applications) of any computer included in your network. You need to do this, for instance, if you plan to run documents that contain dynamic images on those computers (using the **Optimized PostScript Stream** option). You can then use the Virtual Drive Manager to see the images that were downloaded to your computer as well as to delete them from your virtual drive.

3.2 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed procedures that explain how you can build and edit your PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration. It contains the following topics:

3.2.1 Start the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration Program

This procedure explains how to start the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program, which is different from starting PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service itself (see Start and Stop the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Service).

To start the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program:

- From the Windows interface, choose **Start | Programs | PlanetPress Suite _N_ | PlanetPress Watch/ Office/Production _N_ Configuration**. (Where _N_ represents the current PlanetPress Suite installation version number.)
  The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration Program window appears and the default configuration (**ppwatch.cfg**) is opened.
  If this is the first time you open your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration after installation, the PlanetPress Suite Services configuration dialog box appears, where you enter the username and corresponding password under which your configuration's services run.

Related topics:

- Choose the Account to be Used by your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool
- Open a PlanetPress Suite Configuration File
- Reopen a Configuration File
- Exit the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration Program

3.2.2 Choose the Account to be Used by your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool

To be able to run and to have access to local files as well as to files available on other computers in your network, PlanetPress Suite applications and services must identify themselves using a local or network account.

The first time you start the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program, the application automatically asks you to choose an account. The account you choose then can be changed at any time afterwards.

Note that when you perform the following procedure, you actually choose the account that will be used by PlanetPress Watch/Server and all its services, as well as by PlanetPress Fax and PlanetPress Image (only PlanetPress Suite Messenger is not affected, since it always uses the Local System account). Note that if you install PlanetPress Fax or PlanetPress Image on the same computer after performing this procedure, you will have to perform it once again, so as to choose the same account for all the installed applications.

Choose the Account to be Used by PlanetPress Watch/Server

1.	If you just installed or upgraded to PlanetPress Watch/Server 6, this procedure will be automatically started the first time you run the application. To manually start this procedure, choose **Tools** | **Configure Services** in PlanetPress Watch/Server.

The PlanetPress Suite Services configuration dialog box appears.

	2.	Set the PlanetPress Suite applications permissions as required.

Local System account: Select to run all the PlanetPress Suite Services (including PlanetPress Watch/Server, PlanetPress Fax, and PlanetPress Image) under the Local System account. The Local System account is distinct from the Administrator account. It requires no username or password, and its privileges may exceed those of the user currently logged in. Running under this account rather than a user account prevents problems that may arise if the user lacks a permission the service requires. If a configuration relies on any resources mapped to a particular user, such as mapped network drives or shared printers, they are unavailable. It is recommended that you create a configuration for a particular user. Clear Local System account to run all the PlanetPress Suite Services under the account you specify. Use the options that become available when you clear Local System account to enter the account information—you must enter a valid user name and password to use Microsoft Outlook as your email client for Email input and Send email output tasks.

Display network domains and usernames: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration search for existing domains and display the domains it find in the Domain box, and the usernames in those domains in the Username box. Although this is useful if you do not know the domain name and username of the account you want to specify, it can also be very time-consuming if there are many domains.

Domain: Select the domain in which the user account resides, or enter the name of the domain manually.

Username: Enter the name of the user account.

Password: Enter the password for the user account you specified in the Username box.

Confirm password: Enter the password you entered in the Password box.

Services start automatically: Select to start the required PlanetPress Watch/Server automatically.

3.	Click **OK**.
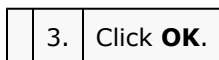
PlanetPress Watch/Server applies the user account information to all the services (PlanetPress Watch/Server, PlanetPress Fax, PlanetPress Image, LPD input, Serial input, Telnet input, FTP output, LPR output), that run on this computer (with the exception of PlanetPress Suite Messenger, which always runs under the Local System account).

The PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program does not test usernames and passwords, but merely associates them with the services that require them. If you enter a bad username or password, these services will be denied access to the selected account.

Related topics:

- Control Access to the Locally Installed Services

3.2.3 Control Access to the Locally Installed Services

Use the Access Manager to control access to those services running on your computer. Access is controlled on a per computer basis.

Control access to your locally installed service:

1.	Choose **Tools**	**Managers**	**Access Manager**.

The **Access Manager** dialog box is displayed. It lists all those computers that have PlanetPress Design, PlanetPress Watch/Server, PlanetPress Fax or PlanetPress Image installed.

2.	Grant or deny access to the services installed on this computer by checking the corresponding boxes next to the listed computers. If required, add computers to the list.
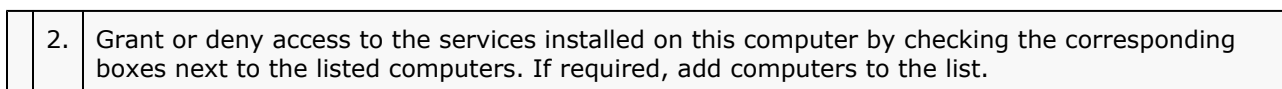
IP address: Enter a computer's IP address and click to add this computer to the list displayed below. This lets you add computers on which PlanetPress Suite software are not yet installed.

Permissions

This list box includes all those computers on which PlanetPress Suite software are currently installed or which have been manually added. It also lets you see and change each computer's access rights to the services available on this computer.

Host name: The name of those computers on which PlanetPress Suite software are currently installed or which have been manually added.

IP address: IP address associated with the named host.

HTTP Input: Select if you want the PlanetPress Watch/Server HTTP Server installed on this computer to accept HTTP requests from the corresponding computer.

LPD Input: Select if you want the PlanetPress Watch/Server LDP Server installed on this computer to accept LPD requests from the corresponding computer.

Send Job: Select if you want the PlanetPress Fax and PlanetPress Image installed on this computer to accept jobs from the corresponding computer.

Send Document: Select if you want PlanetPress Watch/Server Server installed on this computer to accept PlanetPress Design documents sent from the corresponding computer.

3.	Click **OK**.

Related topics:

- Choose the Account to be Used by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool
  (Page 0)

3.2.4 Exit the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration Program

This procedure describes how to exit the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program. Note that this procedure does not stop the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service, nor any of its related services.

To exit the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program:

- From the **PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button**, choose **Exit**.
  If the default configuration file (**ppwatch.cfg**) is currently opened, and if it includes unsaved modifications, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program asks you whether to send the configuration to the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service before exiting. Select the **Always send without prompting for confirmation** option to automatically send the edited version of the configuration before exiting.
  If the default configuration does not include any active process, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program asks you whether to continue.
  When the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program sends a configuration, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service is stopped and restarted, if it is currently running, and the new configuration starts being applied immediately.
  If a file different from the default configuration file is currently opened, and if it includes unsaved modifications, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program asks you whether to save the configuration before exiting. Select the **Always save without prompting for confirmation** option to automatically save any unsaved work before exiting.

Related topics:

- Start the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration Program

3.2.5 Create a New Configuration

When you start the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program, it always opens the default configuration file (**ppwatch.cfg**). If you create a new configuration, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program automatically creates a process that includes an unknown input and output task. You can then edit and save your new configuration.

To create a new configuration:

- From the **PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button**, choose **New**.
  The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program creates a new configuration.
  If the default configuration file (**ppwatch.cfg**) is currently opened, and if it includes unsaved modifications, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program asks you whether to send the configuration to the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service before creating the new configuration. Select the **Always send without prompting for confirmation** option to automatically send the edited version of the configuration.
  If a file different from the default configuration file is currently opened, and if it includes unsaved modifications, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program asks you whether to save the configuration before creating the new configuration. Select the **Always save without prompting for confirmation** option to automatically save any unsaved work.

Related topics:

- Saving and Sending a Configuration
- Open a PlanetPress Suite Configuration File (Page 0)
- Reopen a Configuration File (Page 0)
- Why group objects in the Configuration Components area? (Page 0)
- Import Processes from Another Configuration File (Page 0)
- Save a Configuration (Page 0)

3.2.6 Open a PlanetPress Suite Configuration File

Since, when you open the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program, it always opens the default configuration file (**ppwatch.cfg**), you may rarely need to use the following procedure. You may need it though, if you want to open and work on any other procedure (**[file name].pw6**).

To open a PlanetPress Suite configuration file:

| 1. | From the **PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button**, choose **Open**. |

If the default configuration file (**ppwatch.cfg**) is currently opened, and if it includes unsaved modifications, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program asks you whether to send the configuration to the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service before creating the new configuration. Select the **Always send without prompting for confirmation** option to automatically send the edited version of the configuration before opening any other configuration (see Saving and Sending a Configuration (Page 0)).

If a file different from the default configuration file is currently opened, and if it includes unsaved modifications, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program asks you whether to save the configuration before creating the new configuration. Select the **Always save without prompting for confirmation** option to automatically save any unsaved work before opening any other configuration.

The Open dialog box appears.

| 2. | If the version of the file you want to open is not 6, select the correct type in the File type box. |
| 3. | Navigate to the configuration file you want to open, select it and click **Open**. |

3.2.7 Reopen a Configuration File

The Reopen sub-menu can contain as many as nine configurations, each one appearing in the order in which they were opened last.

To Reopen a Configuration:

| 1. | From the **PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button**, choose **Reopen**. |
| 2. | From the **Reopen** sub-menu, click the configuration that you want to reopen. |

Related topics:

- Create a New Configuration
- Open a PlanetPress Suite Configuration File
- Save a Configuration

3.2.8 Add a PlanetPress Suite Process

Configurations can comprise as many as 512 processes and an infinity of tasks. A given process may include output tasks that generate files used by input tasks from other processes. When you send a configuration to your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service, all its active processes are applied. Each process' schedule determines when its initial input task can be performed. Other tasks included in the process are performed regardless of schedule, granted that the previous task was performed.

Bear in mind that a configuration can include only one startup process. When the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service is started, it runs that process first and only once.

Note that the tasks added by default when a process is created can be changed in your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools preferences.

To add a PlanetPress Suite process:

- Choose **Home** | **Processes** | **Process**.
  A new process appears in the Configuration Components area. Its two initial tasks appear in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Process area.

To add a PlanetPress Sutie startup process:

- Choose **Home** | **Processes** | **Startup Process**.
  A new startup process appears in the Configuration Components area. Its two initial tasks appear in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Process area.

Related topics:

- Create a New Configuration (Page 0)
- Open a PlanetPress Suite Configuration File (Page 0)
- Reopen a Configuration File (Page 0)
- Import Processes from Another Configuration File (Page 0)
- Save a Configuration (Page 0)

3.2.9 Import Processes from Another Configuration File

You can import individual processes or groups of processes from a PlanetPress Suite configuration file without having to import the contents of the entire configuration file. PlanetPress Suite Configuration imports everything necessary to run the processes, including configured tasks and configuration components.

To import processes from another configuration file:

1.	From the **PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button**, choose **Import**	**Configuration Components**.

The Import dialog appears.

2.	Navigate to the PlanetPress Suite configuration file containing the processes or groups of processes you want to import.
3.	Select the file, then click **Open**.

The Import Configuration dialog appears displaying all the processes and/or process groups, as well as the Subprocesses, Global Variables, PlanetPress Design documents and Printer Queues in the selected configuration file.

	4.	In the list, select the components you want to import.

The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program lets you open and import any of the following:

- Complete PlanetPress Watch 3 configurations.
- Complete PlanetPress Watch 4 to 6 configurations, including PlanetPress Server 6 configurations.
- Specific processes from PlanetPress Watch/Server 6 configurations, including their local variables.
- Specific subprocesses from any PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools configurations.
- Specific global variables from PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools configurations.
- Specific PlanetPress or PrintShop Mail documents.
- Specific Printer Queues.

Note: PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration imports the selected objects and automatically replaces duplicate names. Note that if the initial configuration and the imported configuration both include a startup process, the one included in the imported process will become a standard process.

Related topics:

- Create a New Configuration (Page 0)
- Open a PlanetPress Suite Configuration File (Page 0)
- Why group objects in the Configuration Components area? (Page 0)
- Save a Configuration (Page 0)

3.2.10 Save a Configuration

Files created and edited using the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program can be saved as PlanetPress Suite configuration files (**[file name].pwX**) or as the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools default configuration file (**ppwatch.cfg**). Bear in mind that the default configuration is the only one that the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools service can run. So if you actually want to run a different configuration, you must save it under the default configuration file name. Since this overwrites the original default configuration file, you may consider making a backup copy.

To save the current configuration:

- From the **PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button**, choose **Save**.
  Changes to the current configuration are saved. If the current configuration is the default configuration (**ppwatch.cfg**), it is saved as a copy of this configuration (**ppwatch.pwX**). The actual configuration applied by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools service is not affected.

To save the current configuration under a new name:

	1.	From the **PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button**, choose **Save As**.

The Save as dialog box is displayed.

	2.	Enter the new name of the configuration in the File name box and click **Save**.

The current configuration is saved under the new name. If the current configuration is the default configuration (**ppwatch.cfg**), it is saved as a copy of this configuration (**[file name].pwX**). The actual configuration applied by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools service is not affected.

To save the current configuration as the default configuration applied by your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool:

- From the **PlanetPress Watch/Office/Production Button**, choose **Send Configuration**.
  The current configuration is saved as the default configuration (**ppwatch.cfg**) applied by PlanetPress Watch/Server. If the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool service is running, it is stopped and restarted.

Related topics:

- Create a New Configuration (Page 0)
- Open a PlanetPress Suite Configuration File (Page 0)
- Reopen a Configuration File (Page 0)

3.2.11 Use Online Help

The PlanetPress Suite online help system is composed of two distinct sections.

- The first section contains general information on the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program, PlanetPress Fax and PlanetPress Image. This section is provided in a variety of languages.
- The second section contains detailed information on the following topics: data, input, output and action tasks, conditions, scripting, printing, scheduling, configuration options, error handling and debugging. This section is provided in English only.

To display online help in PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration:

- Choose **Help** | **Help** | **User Guide** or **Help** | **Help** | **Reference Guide**.

Objectif Lune's website offers downloadable PDF versions of the documentation manuals in which you can find all the information available in both sections of the online help system. This document is provided in English only, and are available at: http://www.objectiflune.com/OL/en-CA/Download/ DownloadCenter.aspx?Product=PlanetPress&Cat=DocumentationItem#1.

3.2.12 Rename Objects in the Configuration Components Area

You can rename processes, groups, and printer queues in the Configuration Components area.

Documents are different, since they were not created using the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools. You cannot change the name, the file name and the description of local PlanetPress Design documents. You can, on the other hand, change the name of printer-resident documents.

The procedures here describe how to change the name of an object or group. The first describes how to change the name in the Configuration Components area. The second describes how to change the name of a process, printer queue, or printer-resident document using the Object Inspector.

Note that names cannot begin with a number. They can only contain the following ASCII characters: underscore, upper and lower case letters of the alphabet, all digits 0 through 9. If you enter an invalid name, you will be prompted to correct it (unless if the corresponding option has been turned off).

To rename a process, printer queue or group in the Configuration Components area:

1.	In the Configuration Components area, right-click the name of an object or group and choose **Rename** from the pop-up menu.

The name of the object or group is highlighted and ready to be edited.

	2.	Type the new name over the existing name and press **ENTER**.

PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration renames the object or group.

To rename a resident document:

	1.	In the Documents section of the Configuration Components area, double-click a printer-resident document.
	2.	The PlanetPress Design Document Options dialog box is opened.
	3.	In the **Document name** box, enter the new document name and click **OK**.

PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools rename the resident document.

3.2.13 Expand and Collapse Categories and Groups in the Configuration Components Area

You can expand and collapse the Processes, Global Variables, Documents and Printers Queues categories, and groups, in the Configuration Components area.

To expand or collapse categories or groups in the Configuration Components area:

- Click the expand/collapse button to the left of the item.

A) Collapse button. Click to collapse the expanded items. B) Expand button. Click to expand the collapsed items.

Related topics:

- Reorder Objects in the Configuration Components Area (Page 0)
- Group and Ungroup Objects in the Configuration Components Area (Page 0)

3.2.14 Cut, Copy and Paste Objects in the Configuration Components Area

To cut, copy and paste objects in the Configuration Components area, you can drag and drop them as well as use commands. If you simply wish to change the order in which objects appear in a category or group, refer to Reorder Objects in the Configuration Components Area (Page 0).

Dragging and dropping single or multiple objects as well as groups lets you cut and paste them. Pressing the CTRL key while dragging and dropping copies and pastes the selected objects. Note that you can only drag and drop multiple objects if they belong to the same category (Processes, Documents or Printer queues) and appear at the same level in the hierarchy.

A) Two examples of objects that can be dragged and dropped together. B) Two examples of objects that cannot be selected together, since they do not belong to the same category or do not appear at the same level in the hierarchy.

Dropping objects onto a group adds them to the group (provided that the selected objects can be added to the group — see Group and Ungroup Objects in the Configuration Components Area (Page 0)).

As you drag, the pointer changes to indicate useful information, such as whether the selected items may or may not be dropped at the currently selected location. A plus sign appears when you press the CTRL key to indicate that the selected objects will be copied, not cut, before being pasted.

A) Printer dragged and dropped at a new location within a group. B) The blue line indicates where the object will be dropped and the upward pointing triangle indicates that it will be added at the same level as the next object above. C) When a group is the currently selected drop location, its label turns maroon. The illegal sign indicates that the selected document cannot be dropped within this group because it is not of the same type as the other documents within the group.

You can select multiple documents and drag and drop them, even if they are of different types, if it is only to change the order in which they appear within the Documents category.

A) Reordering several documents using drag and drop. The blue line indicates where the documents will be dropped and the downward pointing triangles indicate that they will be added at the same level as the next object down. An illegal sign would be displayed if the triangles were pointing up, since the selected documents are not all of the same type as those included in the group above.

Dropping documents onto printer queues does not move the documents, but rather assigns them to these queues (see PlanetPress Suite Printer Queues (Page 0)).

To move objects in the Configuration Components area using drag and drop:

1.	In the Configuration Components area, select the objects you want to move.	
2.	Drag them to a legal drop target. Pay attention to the information given by the pointer as you are moving the mouse around.	
3.	Release the mouse button to remove the selected objects from their original location and to paste them to the target location.	

To copy objects in the Configuration Components area using drag and drop:

1.	In the Configuration Components area, select the objects you want to move.
2.	Press the CTRL key and drag the objects to a legal drop target. Pay attention to the information given by the pointer as you are moving the mouse around.
3.	Release the mouse button to copy them from their original location and paste them to the target location.

Related topics:

- Delete Objects and Groups from the Configuration Components Area (Page 0)

3.2.15 Reorder Objects in the Configuration Components Area

There are multiple ways you can reorder objects in the Configuration Components area. Commands available from the right-click menu let you reorder selected objects, as well as alphabetically reorder objects listed directly under a category or appearing within a group.

To reorder selected objects in the Configuration Components area:

1.	Right-click an object or group.
2.	In the menu that appears, choose **Order**, then select one of the following:

- **Up One Layer** to move the item one level up in the hierarchy. If the item is already the top object in the category, or within a group, this command has no effect.
- **Down One Layer** to move the item one level down in the hierarchy. If the item is already the bottom object in the category, or within a group, this command has no effect.
- **To Top Layer** to move the item to the top level in the hierarchy. This moves the item to the top of the category or to the top of the group. If the item is already the top object in the category, or within a group, this command has no effect.
- **To Bottom Layer** to move the item to the bottom level in the hierarchy.

To alphabetically reorder objects in the Configuration Components Area:

- Click the either a category (Processes, Global Variables, Documents, or Printer Queues) or a group and choose **View** | **Arrange** | **Sort by Name.**

Related topics:

- Expand and Collapse Categories and Groups in the Configuration Components Area (Page 0)
- Group and Ungroup Objects in the Configuration Components Area (Page 0)

3.2.16 Group and Ungroup Objects in the Configuration Components Area

Group items in the Configuration Components area to facilitate the organization of your work (see Grouping Objects (Page 0)). Groups also allow you to assign multiple documents to multiple PlanetPress Suite printer queues.

You group items only within their own category. Thus you can only group processes with other processes, documents with other documents, and printer queues with other printer queues. In the documents category, you can only group documents with others of the same version and type. For example, you can only group documents from PlanetPress Design6 (files with a PTK extension) with other PTK files, not with printer-resident documents.

To add a group in the Configuration Components area:

- In the Configuration Components area, click a category and choose **View** | **Arrange** | **Group**.
  A new group is added at the end of the category.

To add objects to an existing group:

- Drag-and-drop the objects onto the group.
  The objects are added as the last objects in the group.

To remove objects from a group:

- Drag-and-drop the objects out of the group.
  The objects are removed from the group. If the group becomes empty, you are prompted to confirm the deletion of the group.

To add selected objects to a new group:

1.	Select multiple objects that are not part of a group.
2.	Press **CTRL+G**.

A new group is added and the selected items are moved to that new group.

To ungroup selected objects:

1.	Select objects in a group.
2.	Press **CTRL+U**.

Related topics:

- Expand and Collapse Categories and Groups in the Configuration Components Area (Page 0)
- Reorder Objects in the Configuration Components Area (Page 0)

3.2.17 Delete Objects and Groups from the Configuration Components Area

Delete objects and groups from the Configuration Components area.

To delete a process, document, or printer queue:

- Click a process, document, or printer queue, then press **DELETE**.
  In the case of processes and printer queues, the object is deleted. If there is only one process in the configuration, you cannot delete it; there must be at least one process in the configuration. If you delete the last configured process, a process with two unknown tasks remains.
  In the case of documents, you are first prompted to confirm the deletion. You can turn off this prompt in the Notification Messages User Options.

To delete a group of processes, documents, or printer queues:

- Click a process group, documents group, or printer queue group, then press **DELETE**.
  In the case of process groups and printer queue groups, the group and all its members are deleted. In the case of documents, you are first prompted to confirm the deletion of each member of the group. You can turn off this prompt in the Notification Messages User Options.

3.2.18 Undo a Command

The undo command lets you undo most commands performed with the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program.

To undo a command:

- From the **Quick Access Toolbar**, choose **Undo.**

Related topics:

- Redo a Command (Page 0)

3.2.19 Redo a Command

The Redo command can be used to redo commands that were just undone using the Undo command. For example, if you used the Undo command three times in a row and immediately thereafter decided to redo those commands, you could use the Redo command three times in a row to redo those commands. Note that all commands in PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration can be redone.

To redo a command:

- From the **Quick Access Toolbar**, choose **Redo**.

Related topics:

- Undo a Command (Page 0)

3.2.20 View Document Properties

The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration programs let you view a number of the properties associated with
the PlanetPress Design documents you use, but most of those properties are set in
PlanetPress Design and cannot be edited using the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program.

The Document name of printer-resident documents can be changed using the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program simply because it is initially set using that program.

The properties available via the Printer Settings tab define how documents are printed. They are also set
using the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program and are retained when documents are assigned to
printer queues. They can be edited by selecting documents within the Documents category, which
changes the document's default printer settings, or within the Printer Queues category, which changes the
document properties on the selected queue .

To view the properties of a document:
Do one of the following.

- Click any document to display its properties in the Object Inspector.
- Double-click any document to display its properties in the PlanetPress Design Document Options
  dialog box.

File name: The file name of the document, as entered in PlanetPress Design. This is the name of the
file saved in PlanetPress Design, or the name you give it when you add a printer-resident document in your
PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration. It may have a PTK extension (if it has been sent to PlanetPress Watch
from PlanetPress Design), or a PS extension (if it is printer-resident).

Version: The version of the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool in which the document was originally created. Printerresident
documents are identified as such.

Document name: The name of the document as entered in PlanetPress Design. You can enter a name for printer-resident document here; the name does not have to match the name given it in PlanetPress Design. Since this property is used in the trigger to identify the document when PlanetPress Watch sends a job to be merged on a printer, the document name must exactly match the name of the document installed on the printer.

Description: The description of the document as entered in PlanetPress Design.

3.2.21 Edit Properties in the Object Inspector

You can edit certain properties of processes, documents, and printers in the Object Inspector without opening their respective properties dialog boxes. For information on which properties are editable, see Object Inspector (Page 0).

You can also edit common properties of objects by selecting them, and editing the common properties of the selections that appear in the Object Inspector. Your edits are then applied to all selected objects.

To edit properties of processes, documents, and printers in the Object Inspector:

1.	In the Configuration Components area, select a process, a document (either a document in the Documents category or a document assigned to a printer queue) or a printer queue.

The selected object's properties appear in the Object Inspector.

2.	In the Object Inspector, click an editable property.

3.	Depending on the values that can be entered for the selected property, edit the value by typing a one or by selecting a new one from the drop-down list.

Bear in mind that certain properties can neither be displayed nor edited via the Object Inspector.

To edit common properties of processes, documents, and printer queues:

1.	In a given category within the Configuration Components area, select multiple processes, documents (either a document in the Documents category or a document assigned to a printer queue) or printer queues.

The properties common to selected objects appear in the Object Inspector.

	2.	In the Object Inspector, click an editable property.
	3.	Depending on the values that can be entered for the selected property, edit the value by typing a one or by selecting a new one from the drop-down list.

Bear in mind that certain properties can neither be displayed nor edited via the Object Inspector.

Related topics:

- View and Edit the Properties of a Document Created using PlanetPress Design

3.2.22 Select a Process

Select a process in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program so as to see its tasks in the Process area and process related information in the Object Inspector.

You must select a process to change its schedule and polling interval, to choose a sample data file and to add and remove tasks and branches.

To select the current process:

- In the Configuration Components area, click the process you want to select.

Related topics:

- Why group objects in the Configuration Components area? (Page 0)

3.2.23 Resize Rows and Columns of the PlanetPress Suite Process Area

Resize the rows and columns of the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Process area in which tasks are located to better visualize the organization of your process.

To resize rows and columns of the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Process area:

	1.	In the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Process area, place your cursor over the separator line dividing each section of row or column rulers.
	2.	When the cursor changes appearance, click and drag up or down to resize rows, or left or right to resize columns.

A dashed line appears as you drag indicating the new separation. The row or column, with all its tasks, moves accordingly.

Related topics:

- Zoom In or Out within the PlanetPress Suite Process Area (Page 0)
- Resize the Program Window Areas (Page 0)

3.2.24 Zoom In or Out within the PlanetPress Suite Process Area

You can do a zoom out in the PlanetPress Suite Process area to see more tasks at the same time. In zoom out mode, you can perform the exact same functions as in normal view mode.

To zoom in or out on the PlanetPress Suite Process Area:

- Select **View** | **Navigate** | **Zoom Out**.
  To zoom back in, deselect **View** | **Navigate** | **Zoom Out**.

Related topics:

- Resize Rows and Columns of the PlanetPress Suite Process Area (Page 0)

3.2.25 Highlight a Task or Branch

The Highlight command lets you toggle the background color of selected tasks and branches. Note that the highlight color may be changed via the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration preferences.

To highlight a Process Area square:

1.	Use the mouse pointer to select a given square.
2.	Select **View** | **Navigate** | **Highlight**.

To remove the highlight, deselect **View** | **Navigate** | **Highlight.**

3.2.26 Resize the Program Window Areas

You can adjust the layout of the Program window by resizing one of the Program window areas.

This also applies to resizing a combined area (see Combine and Attach Areas (Page 0)).

To resize a Program window area:

- Move the pointer to the edge of an area you want to resize to display the resize pointer, then click and drag to resize the area.

Related topics:

- Resize Rows and Columns of the PlanetPress Suite Process Area (Page 0)
- Zoom In or Out within the PlanetPress Suite Process Area (Page 0)

3.2.27 Show or Hide Areas of the Program Window

You can choose the areas of the Program window you want to display (see Combine and Attach Areas (Page 0)).

To show or hide a Program window area:

- Choose **View** and then the area you want to show or hide.

Related topics:

- Resize Rows and Columns of the PlanetPress Suite Process Area (Page 0)
- Zoom In or Out within the PlanetPress Suite Process Area (Page 0)
- Resize the Program Window Areas (Page 0)

3.2.28 Dock and Undock Areas of the Program Window

The Configuration Components area, the Object Inspector, and the Messages area can be displayed in windows that are attached to the Program window (docked position) or that float above it (undocked position). You dock a window when you attach it to the Program window, and you undock it when you detach it from the Program window.

The Configuration Components area, the Object Inspector and the Messages area can each be displayed inside its own window, whether docked or undocked, but they can also be displayed attached or combined inside the same window.

- When separate areas are displayed simultaneously, they appear in different sections of the Program window.
- When attached areas are displayed simultaneously, they appear side-by-side or above one another inside sub-windows.
- When combined areas are displayed simultaneously, they overlap one another inside the same window. Tabs let you switch from one area to the other.

For more information, refer to Combining and Attaching Areas of the Program Window (Page 0) and to Combine and Attach Areas (Page 0).

To undock an area of the Program window:

- Do one of the following:
  - Click either a title bar (separate or attached areas) or a tab (combined areas) displaying the name of the Configuration Components area, the Object Inspector or the Messages area and move the mouse pointer so as to drag the area away from its docked position. As you drag, a rectangle is displayed to show the landing position. Release the mouse button when the rectangle is in a floating position (not attached to the Program window).
  - Double-click either a title bar (separate or attached areas) or a tab (combined areas) displaying the name of the Configuration Components area, the Object Inspector or the Messages area. The area will jump from a docked to an undocked position and vice-versa.

To dock an area of the Program window:

- Do one of the following:
  - Click either a title bar (separate or attached areas) or a tab (combined areas) displaying the name of the Configuration Components area, the Object Inspector or the Messages area and move the mouse pointer so as to drag the area away from its current undocked position. As you drag, a rectangle is displayed to show the landing position. Release the mouse button when the rectangle is in a docked position (attached to the Program window).
  - Double-click either a title bar (separate or attached areas) or a tab (combined areas) displaying the name of the Configuration Components area, the Object Inspector or the Messages area. The area will jump from an undocked to a docked position and vice-versa.

3.2.29 Combine and Attach Areas

The Configuration Components area, the Object Inspector, and the Messages area can be attached or combined to one another and share the same space. However they are displayed, you can always drag, dock, or undock any area as desired. You can also switch among areas when they are combined, as well as maximize or minimize areas when they are attached. For more information, refer to Combining and Attaching Areas of the Program Window (Page 0).

The following procedures will show a number of things you can do to change the way information is displayed by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program.

To combine areas:

- Click either a title bar (separate or attached areas) or a tab (combined areas) displaying the name of the Configuration Components area, the Object Inspector or the Messages area and move the mouse pointer. As you drag, a rectangle is displayed to show the landing position. Drag the rectangle directly over another area and release the mouse button when the shape of a tab appears at the bottom of the rectangle.

To switch between combined area:

- At the bottom of the combined area, click the tab of the area you want to bring to the top. If all the tabs are not displayed, use the left and right arrows to navigate between them.

    The left and right arrows lets you show hidden tabs.

To reorder tabs in a combined area:

- At the bottom of the combined area, click the tab of the area you want to move, drag it to the left or right and drop it at the desired position.

    Dragging a combined area to new position.

To take an area out of a combined area:

- Do one of the following:
    - Click the tab displaying the name of the area you want to take out and move the mouse pointer so as to drag the area away from the combined area. As you drag, a rectangle is displayed to show the landing position. Release the mouse button when the rectangle is away from the combined area.

▪ Double-click the tab of the area you want to take out of the combined area. The area will jump outside of the combined area.

To attach areas:

1.	Click either a title bar (separate areas) or a tab (combined areas) displaying the name of the Configuration Components area, the Object Inspector or the Messages area and move the mouse pointer.

As you drag, a rectangle is displayed to show the landing position.

2.	Drag around to the edges of another area and release the mouse button when the rectangle appears to the left or right, or above or below the other area. The rectangle should not display a tab at its bottom, otherwise the areas will not be attached but rather combined.

Note that you can attach an area to a group of combined areas, as well as change combined areas into attached areas. When attaching previously combined areas, you may find it easier to do it in two steps: begin by taking the area out of the combined area and then try attaching it.

3.	Resize each part of the new group as desired.

Attaching an area to a group of combined areas. The rectangle showing the landing position is not tabbed and the area will therefore be moved next to the combined area.

To maximize or restore attached areas:

- Do one of the following:
  - ▪ To maximize a vertically attached area, click the upward pointing arrow on its title bar.
  - ▪ To restore a vertically attached area, click the downward pointing arrow on its title bar.
  - ▪ To maximize a horizontally attached area, click the left pointing arrow on its title bar.
  - ▪ To restore a horizontally attached area, click the right pointing arrow on its title bar.

A) Click to maximize this area. B) Click to restore this currently maximized area. C) Click to maximize this area. D) Click to restore this currently maximized area.

To take an attached area out of a group:

- Do one of the following:
  - ▪ Click the title bar displaying the name of the attached area you want to take out and move the mouse pointer so as to drag the area away from the group. As you drag, a rectangle is displayed to show the landing position. Release the mouse button when the rectangle is away from the group.
  - ▪ Double-click the title bar of the area you want to take out. The area will jump outside of the group.

4 Configurations, Processes and Tasks

The Process area is the drawing board where you design processes by adding tasks. In this visual environment, you plan out a chart of tasks through which data will flow from an initial input task to one or more output tasks.

This section gives you an overview of how PlanetPress Watch/Server processes are designing by adding and configuring tasks, conditions and branches.

In this section, you learn to:

- Insert a Branch
- Branch from Here
- Edit Branch Settings
- Add a Task
- Edit a Task
- Add or Edit a Comment
- Replace a Task, Condition, Branch or Comment
- Remove Tasks or Branches
- Cut and Paste, or Copy and Paste a Task or Branch
- Move a Task, Branch or Comment Using Drag-and-Drop
- Duplicate a Task, Branch or Comment Using Drag-and-Drop
- Copy and Paste Properties between Tasks, Conditions or Comments
- Disable or Enable a Task or Branch

In this section, you will find answers to the following question:

- What is a configuration?
- Can I open or import configurations and processes from PlanetPress Suite 3 and PlanetPress Suite 6?
- Are configurations user specific?
- What is the basic structure of a PlanetPress Suite process?
- How do I plan the creation of processes and configurations?
- What is the difference between Design mode and Debug mode?
- What is the significance of tasks in my PlanetPress Suite process being plugins to the software?
- Where do I configure the tasks, branches and conditions that make up my PlanetPress Suite process?
- What is a variable property and how do I enter such a property?
- What are standard variables in PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool, and where can I use them?
- What is meant by job information and where and how can I use this information?
- Can I create my own job info variables?
- Which options do I have when selecting documents in an output or action task?
- Can I send job info variables to output devices, such as printers?
- What are some techniques I should know to work with tasks in the PlanetPress Suite Process area?
- Why are there two ways to add new branches and what is the difference between both methods?
- How are tasks added to a PlanetPress Suite process?
- How can I edit the properties of existing tasks or branches?
- What purpose do comments serve in PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools?
- How can I replace existing tasks, conditions, branches or comments?
- How can I remove tasks and branches and what is the impact on the process?
- How can I cut and paste, or copy and paste tasks and branches?
- What is the simplest way to move tasks, branches and comments?
- What is the simplest way to duplicate tasks, branches and comments?
- Can I paste properties between tasks, conditions or comments?
- Can I ignore tasks and branches and then decide to use them again?

4.1 Configuration Management

What is a configuration?

Each configuration contains:

- One or more processes that each have their own schedule and that may be active or inactive. Bear in mind that only those tasks that are associated with *active* processes that are on schedule are performed.
- A varying number of tasks: input tasks, action tasks and output tasks. Each task has its own properties
- A fixed set of options that control the services used by PlanetPress Watch/Server. Consider the fact that whenever PlanetPress Watch/Server starts any of the services it uses to perform its tasks, it applies a set of configuration options. The default options may be changed and each configuration may have its own set of service options.

When you start the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program, it will automatically display the contents of the PlanetPress Watch/Server default configuration, which is stored in an XML file called **ppwatch.cfg**.

You can edit this file as needed or use it to build other configurations. If you then save this file, the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program will give it a different filename extension. So that if you change the default configuration and save it under the same name, your file will actually be saved under the name **ppwatch.pw6** and the default configuration will still be preserved. If, on the other hand, you use the Send Configuration command, the default configuration file will in fact be overwritten.

You can create as many configurations as you like, save them under the name of your choice and use them for various purposes, such as for future use, or for use on different workstations.

Although PlanetPress Watch/Server configurations are computer specific, they may very well be copied between different computers, with in most cases little or no change. Note that since various settings may differ on different computers, some complications may arise, most of them having to do with paths, folders, and printers. Changing the network settings of the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program can sometimes rectify these problems.

The PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program also lets you open configurations created for version 3 of PlanetPress Watch/Server, as well as import processes included in configurations created for versions 4 and up.

4.2 Opening and Importing Configurations and Processes

Can I open or import configurations and processes from PlanetPress Watch 3 and PlanetPress Watch/Server 6?

The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program lets you open and import any of the following:

- Complete PlanetPress Watch 3 configurations.
- Complete PlanetPress Watch 4 to 6 configurations, including PlanetPress Server 6 configurations.
- Specific processes from PlanetPress Watch/Server 6 configurations, including their local variables.
- Specific subprocesses from any PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools configurations.
- Specific global variables from PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools configurations.
- Specific PlanetPress or PrintShop Mail documents.
- Specific Printer Queues.

4.2.1 Work with PlanetPress 4 to 6.2 Configurations

Configurations created for PlanetPress Watch/Server versions 4 to 6 include processes and tasks, references to documents stored either locally or on available printers (the documents are not as such included in the configuration), printer queues and service option settings.

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

What is included in a PlanetPress Watch/Server6 configuration. A) Service option settings (only a part of the Serial Input service option settings are displayed). B) Processes. C) Global variables. D) References to documents stored either locally or on available printers (referred to as resident documents). E) Printer queues. F) Tasks.

4.2.2 Process Import

You can import individual processes from any PlanetPress Watch/Server6 configuration. Imported processes and their tasks are then simply appended to the currently open configuration (see "Import Processes from Another Configuration File").

Related topics:

- Configuration Management

4.3 Users and Configurations

Are configurations user specific?

When a user opens a session on a computer, they typically need to login. When they do so, a session is opened and customized for them on that computer (certain drive letters and network shortcuts may be mapped, local and network printers may be made available, etc.). Furthermore, local and network rights may be granted to them. The right to get documents from—and to put documents in—local or network folders, for example, or the right to print on such or such printer.

4.3.1 Local and Network Rights

Programs, such as PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools and all their services, must identify themselves in order to be granted permission to perform operations on the computer on which they run as well as on other computers accessible via a network connection. On a given workstation, you can configure your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool to use either the local system account or any specific user account (refer to "Choose the Account to be Used by PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools"). When you do this, you grant the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool and all its services the same rights associated with the selected account (this is true of all services with the exception of the PlanetPress Suite Messenger which always uses the local system account). It is important to note that the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool and its services require administrator rights to run on any given computer and that they must therefore be associated with an account that as such rights.

When you are running the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program on a workstation, if it is associated with an account that is different from your account, the following icon is displayed in the lower right corner of the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program: . This is to draw your attention to the fact that your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool may have rights that differ from your rights, and that this application and its services may therefore not be able to perform some of the actions you can perform when you create or edit a given configuration.

The simplest thing to ensure that rights are the same across your whole network is to create an administrator network account especially for PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools. This will ensure that the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool and all its services have the same rights on all computers and that it is therefore able to perform all the actions defined it needs to on every computer on your network. A less permissive solution is to create an administrator local account for the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool and to replicate it on each computer where the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool and its services are likely to perform operations, such as get files, store files, or run applications and perform operations.

4.3.2 Local Settings

Different users may create different printer queues. Let us say you have a big HP printer in your office. User A creates a printer queue on his system called "Big HP" for that printer, and user B creates one called "My printer" for the same printer. A configuration created on user A's system and than used on user B's system would generate errors trying to print to the "Big HP" printer queue.

Different users may also map network drives differently. Let us say this time that you have a server in your office. User A maps that server's main drive using drive letter "y:" while user B maps it using drive letter "z:" A configuration created on one system and than used on the other would both get and save the wrong files from the wrong drives. Note that such situations may be avoided by using the Universal Naming Convention option.

4.3.3 User Specificity

So PlanetPress Watch/Server configurations are not user specific as such. If you make sure that all the user accounts have adequate network rights, that printer queues are defined the same way on all systems, and that all network drives are mapped using the same drive letters (or that the UNC option is selected in the network options), then you should have no problems running configurations on different systems using different user accounts.

Related topics:

- Configuration Management

4.4 Anatomy of a Process

What is the basic structure of a PlanetPress Watch/Server process?

A PlanetPress Watch/Server process is made up of a succession of operations that receive, route, and optionally process, data from a given source to various destinations using various means. A process is lot like a flowchart that starts with an initial input task, that leads to other tasks, to branches and conditional branches, and eventually to output tasks.

PlanetPress Watch/Server regularly checks for the presence of data for its initial input tasks and starts the corresponding processes whenever data is found. The simplest of processes may only take raw data from a given location and send it as is to a printer. Processes may also be very complex, and include branches, that duplicate the data, conditions, that channel the data according to various factors, and a host of tasks that generate input, that process the data, or that generate various types of output. Each process is limited to a maximum of 256 tasks, but a given PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration may include multiple processes that can even exchange data between them, if the output from a given process is used as input by another process.

A process may include:

- Input Tasks
- Configurations, Processes and Flowcharts
- Action Tasks
- Output Tasks

Bear in mind that the various processes included in a given PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration may have different properties and schedules (see Process Schedule and Other Properties).

4.5 Configurations, Processes and Flowcharts

How do I plan the creation of processes and configurations?

A PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration typically comprises all the tasks that you need to accomplish to generate your required documents, be it printed pages, faxes, email messages, PDF files, etc.

A configuration may be composed of a single process, but it may also be made up of multiples processes. This will be the case, for instance, when you want to use different schedules for the different operations that need to be performed. It may also be the case if you want to use a given process to perform some processing on the input data and to then output the resulting data as input to another process.

So the main structure of your configuration is made up of processes and building blocks of each process are the tasks that receive data, that modify it if required, and that then send it to an output device or application.

You should try to visualize each process as a flowchart: from a single starting point, PlanetPress Watch/Server and its various companion software (PlanetPress Fax, PlanetPress Image) and plugins (Create VDX, Digital Imaging, etc.) perform a number of operations in order to generate the required output. For a given process, the generated output may be in the form of text files stored in a given folder. For another process, the output may be in the form of documents printed on various printers, faxes and emails sent to various locations and addresses. A given process may include two tasks, while the next one may include 47.

The building blocks include input, action and output tasks:

- The role of an input task is to get data from an "outside source" (not from another task from the same process) and to send it down the flowchart to be worked upon by other tasks.
- The role an action task is to get data from another task from the same process, to perform a given operation, and to send it down the flowchart to be worked upon by other tasks.
- The role of an output task is to get data from another task from the same process and to send it to an "outside" device (a printer, for instance), application (PlanetPress Image or PlanetPress Fax) or location (a local or remote folder or FTP site, for example).

Building blocks are connected by lines that indicate the order in which each operation should take place. The single line that comes out of the initial input task may branch out in multiple lines that all culminate in a given output task. So adding an additional output task to a process results in the addition of a a new branch.

A) Added branch resulting from the addition of a new output task. B) New output task.

4.5.1 Branches

There are branches and then there are conditional branches.

- A branch is represented as a crossing   .

- A conditional branch (or condition) is shown as a crossing with a red diamond over it   . The True side of the condition leads to the new branch while the false side leads down the current branch.

Different things happen when data travelling down a process comes to a branch or condition:

- When data travelling through a process comes to a branch, it is duplicated so that identical copies of the data may continue down both branches.
- When data travelling down a process comes to a conditional crossing, it is either sent down the True or the False branch, based on the result of the condition.

There are two ways to add a new branch:

- Quite simply, by adding a new branch. This creates a new output task that remains as unknown until you replace it with a specific task.
- By adding a new output task.

There is only a single way to add a new conditional branch:

- By adding a new condition. Note that to add a new condition, you must begin by choosing the type of condition (file name or size condition, for example) and that you must then set its properties.

You can also cut, copy, paste and delete all types of branches in the PlanetPress Watch/Server Process area. As with tasks, you can cut or copy and paste branches within the same process using drag-and-drop, or between different processes using the Cut or Copy command and then the Paste command. When you move or copy and paste a branch, all its tasks and possible subsequent branches are also moved or duplicated (see ,). Bear in mind that when you cut or delete a branch, you cut or delete all the tasks on that branch.

A) Select the beginning of a branch to cut or copy it as well as to drag-and-drop it.

As with tasks, you can set breakpoints on branches to stop the data at specific crossings when you run the process in Debug mode.

A) Copied conditional branch. B) The copied condition as pasted to two new locations.

Related topics:

- Anatomy of a PlanetPress Suite Process

4.6 Design Versus Debug Mode

What is the difference between Design mode and Debug mode?

The Design mode (default mode) lets you open configurations, add and configure processes and tasks. The Debug mode is used to test and fine tune a given process.

Although you will not be able to add or delete tasks in Debug mode, you will be allowed to change the properties of existing tasks on the fly as you step through your process.

You can use the Debug mode to run your process from beginning to end, but you may also use it in step by step mode. This last option can be used to verify what happens at every step and therefore see exactly what data is received by a task and what data is generated by that same task.

The Debug mode may even be used *not* to fine tune a previously configured task, but *rather* to determine how to configure a task. Let us consider the following example. An initial input task takes data and sends it to an action task that changes the original data. Then comes a Send Email output task that uses information from the data file to populate email addresses and thus generate emails. In Design mode, you would *not* have access to the modified data, but *rather* to the original sample data file. In Debug mode, you would see the data in its processed form when making the data selection for the To box in the properties of the Send Email output task.

A) The information displayed in this box was generated by the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program using the Select Data command. This command opens the Data Selector and lets you select data using your mouse pointer. In Design mode, the Data Selector displays the original sample data. In Debug mode, it displays the data as it is before the current task is performed.

In Debug mode, the Process Area's background changes color and a blue arrow appears to indicate which task will next be performed.

A) Click this button to view the data file as text. In Design mode, the data is always displayed in its original state. In Debug mode, the data is displayed as it is before the current task (identified by the blue arrow) is performed. B) The Process Area in Design mode. C) The Process Area in Debug mode.

Also note that in Debug mode, the process' initial input task is never performed. In other words, no data is taken from the initial input task's source location, but a copy of the sample data file is used as input.

For more detailed information on debugging processes, refer to Debugging PlanetPress Watch/Server Processes (Page 0).

4.7 Tasks as Plugins

What is the significance of tasks in my PlanetPress Watch/Server process being plugins to the software?

Most of the input, action and output tasks available in PlanetPress Watch/Server are in fact plugins. The transparent plugin architecture of PlanetPress Watch/Server means you can add new plugins to continually add functionality to PlanetPress Watch/Server. The fact that a given task is performed by PlanetPress Watch/Server or by a plugin makes no difference in how tasks are configured or performed.

Thanks to this architecture, you can use action plugins from PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration 3.x with PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration6. You can also add Run Script and External Program action tasks to use your own scripts and executables with PlanetPress.

New plugins can also be added to PlanetPress Watch/Server simply by adding them to the plugins folder. You can even download additional, non-supported plugin tasks from the Objectif Lune site.

4.8 Task Properties Dialog Boxes

Where do I configure the tasks, branches and conditions that make up my PlanetPress Watch/Server process?

You must configure the task you add to your PlanetPress Watch/Server process using its properties dialog box. Each task must be configured based on its role and place within the process. Those properties that apply to all the tasks of a given kind are usually configured through the User Option. This is the case, for example, for the serial port used by Serial Input tasks, since they all use the same port.

Some of the boxes available via a task's properties dialog box are just standard boxes, in which you can either type a fixed value or make a choice using a drop-down list. Others though let you enter variable values.

Various dialog boxes contain various tabs, but some tabs appear in a number of dialog boxes.

- **Other** tab: This tab appears in the dialog box of every input task. It gives access to the same properties, but different input tasks may not allow the same variable values.
- **On Error** tab: This tab appears in the dialog box of every task, branch and condition (with the exception of Error Bin input tasks and action tasks from version 3 of PlanetPress Watch/Server). It gives access to the same set of properties for all inputs, outputs, conditions and actions. Only the initial input task has a different, more limited, set of properties.

For a detailed description of the above dialog box tabs, refer to the Reference Help (English only).

A) Properties dialog box of Send Email output tasks. B) The On Error tab includes the same set of properties (but not necessarily the same values) for all tasks, branches and conditions.

4.9 Variable Properties

What is a variable property and how do I enter such a property?

Contrary to fixed properties, variable properties are interpreted at runtime. In other words, when PlanetPress Watch/Server performs a task that includes variable properties, it must translate these properties into actual values. So instead of creating multiple tasks with different fixed properties, you can create fewer tasks with properties that change at runtime as required.

Variable properties may include standard variables (refer to Standard Variables (Page 0)), job info variables (refer to Job Information Elements and Job Info Variables (Page 0)), printer control characters (refer to Printer Control Characters (Page 0)), and data selections (refer to Data Selections (Page 0)). For further power and versatility, you can even mix these with static text. You could, for instance, enter a variable followed by a data selection and then by static text, as in "%o@(1,1,1,1,24,KeepCase,Trim).ptk". Note that all the variable elements listed here may not be used in all cases. Data selections, for example, can only be used if the property allows it.

Most task properties can be variable. Variable property boxes (sometimes referred to as parse fields) are identified with non-black labels in the task's dialog box. In such a box, you may enter a fixed or variable property, as required.

A) A variable property may be entered in the box identified by this label. Maroon is the default color identifying boxes in which you may enter variable properties, but this color may be changed.

When a box that allows variable properties is selected, you may use the right-click menu to add variables and control characters, as well as to get data and make data selections.

A) Boxes that allow variable properties. B) Various types of variables available via the right-click menu.

A) Variables. B) Data selection. C) Printer control characters. D) Static text.

In a box that allows variable values, each variable type is identified as follows:

- A percentage sign identifies standard variables, as well as standard and custom job info variables — %f, for example.
- A backslash indicates a control character — \004, for example.
- An at sign indicates a data selection for emulations other than database — @(1,1,1,1,17,KeepCase,Trim), for example.
- Field indicates a data selection for a database emulation — field(1,0,0,'Billing_Email',KeepCase,NoTrim), for example.

Related topics:

- Standard Variables (Page 0)
- Job Information Elements and Job Info Variables (Page 0)
- Data Selections (Page 0)

4.10 Standard Variables

What are standard variables in PlanetPress Watch/Server, and where can I use them?

The name standard variables is used in opposition with job info variables (see Job Information Elements and Job Info Variables (Page 0)). Like job info variables, standard variables may be used to define variable properties (see Variable Properties).

4.10.1 Available Standard Variables

Variable	Name	Example value when interpreted
%c	Current job file	Page 1 of 1 CU04614107,2005-08-08 Mr Gino Monzon,New Orleans Car Rental 276-46th Avenue,New Orleans,LA,US,25331-840 EFY2551585,Container Leasing & Renta,150,29, 1,300.58
%F	Job File Path and Name	C:\Program Files\PlanetPress Suite 4\PlanetPress Watch\Spool\job1D80328.dat
%f	Job File Name	job1D80328.dat
%z	Job File Size	34134
%o	Original File Name[1]Note that in the case of configurations that were created for version 3 of PlanetPress Watch/ Server and that included LDP input tasks, this variable was resolved as the spool file name. With PlanetPress Watch/ Server 6, it is now always interpreted as the actual original file name, as specified by the job control file.	invoice_june2nd.txt
%O	Original File Name Without Extension	invoice_june2nd
%y	Current Year	2003
%m	Current Month (numeric)	06
%M	Current Month (text)	June
%L	Current Month (short text)	JUN
%d	Current Day (numeric)	16
%D	Current Day (text)	Monday
%I	Current Day (short text)	MON
%h	Current Hour	18
%n	Current Minute	03
%s	Current Second	41
%u	Unique 13-char string	0ZIS4CW8U47VI00

Related topics:

- Variable Properties
- Job Information Elements and Job Info Variables

4.11 Job Information Elements and Job Info Variables

What is meant by job information and where and how can I use this information?

Quite simply, job information is information on a given file. Different types of input have different job information attached to them. A message received via an Email Input task will have as job information a reception date and most likely a sender's name and email address. A file received via a Serial Input task will have at least a file name and as job information. Job information is contextual information in the sense that it changes with every job, as PlanetPress Watch/Server receives data files via its various input tasks. It varies with every job, in other words.

Job information elements are always associated with a given number. In the case of Folder Capture input tasks, for instance, job information element 1 is associated with the source file's name, and job information element 2 is associated with the name of the folder in which the source file is stored.

This information is not part of the data as such, but whenever a job is received, all the available job information elements are stored in the form of variables. Job information element 1 is stored in job info variable 1 (or %1), job information element 2 is stored in job info variable 2 (or %2), and so forth.

The following table indicates which job information elements may be associated with each type of input:

Input task	Job info %1	Job info %2	Job info %3	Job info %4	Job info %5
Create File	[None]	[None]	[None]	[None]	[None]
Email	Date received	Sender's name	Sender's address	Subject	Recipients
Folder Capture	Source file name	Folder	[None]	[None]	[None]
FTP	User name	FTP server	Source file name	Folder1If the source folder is the root folder, no information is provided.	[None]
HTTP Get	URL address	[None]	[None]	[None]	[None]
HTTP Server	Client IP Address	Request Header	[None]	[None]	[None]
LDP	User name	Host computer	Job name	Source file name	Sender's IP address
Serial	Source file name	[None]	[None]	[None]	[None]
Telnet	[None]	[None]	[None]	[None]	[None]
WinQueue	User name	Host computer	Printer name	Document name	[None]

This information can be used in different ways:

- You can add it as text before the actual data.
- Variable Properties (Page 0)
- Sending Job Info Variables to Output Devices (Page 0)

A) Using the Other tab of the input task's properties dialog box, you can add job information elements as text to the data file. The elements are always added at the beginning of the file and a different line is used for every element. Form feed is always displayed at the top of the list on the left so that you can insert it to in the list on the right, as required. If you wanted to print a separator page, for instance, you would typically add a form feed after the selected job information elements. B) Using a job info variable as a variable task property. With every job, the corresponding job information element is updated as is the corresponding task property.

Job information variables may be used by themselves as variable task properties, but they may also be used along with text or even data selections (refer to Data Selections (Page 0)).

A) Job info variable 3 is used in the To box to dynamically use the sender's address when generating email outputs. B) Job info variable 4 automatically adds the subject of the incoming email used as input to the Subject line of the outgoing email. C) Adding job info variable 2 after the word Dear in the body of the outgoing email will personalize each message by dynamically adding the name of each recipient.

One very important issue with job information elements is the presence and validity of those elements. Here are a few examples:

- If you use job info variable 3 in a process that begins with a Serial input task, you will have a problem because no information is associated with this element.
- If you use job info variable 4 in a process that begins with an Email input task, but if the sender did not enter anything in the Subject box before sending the email, then no information will be associated with this element. Note that extra caution should be used with job information elements associated with email messages, since their validity often varies with each sender: some people will not use their actual name when configuring their email application, some will use a discreet address to prevent recipients from seeing their true email address, etc.

Another issue to be considered is the fact that job information elements often change in the course of a process. When a secondary input task brings in new data, for example, the previous data and job information elements are replaced. If you process includes multiple branches, this may mean that different branches will carry different job information elements.

A) This task brings data and the associated job information elements into the process. B) When the process reaches this branch, the initial data and job info elements are duplicated. Both branches therefore carry the exact same information. C) This secondary input task brings in new data and job information elements. The main and secondary branches now carry different data and job info elements. D) These two output tasks process different data and job info elements.

4.11.1 Job Info Variables in Debug Mode

Running a process in Debug mode presents a problem, as far as job info variables are concerned, because in this case there is no actual input data file and thus no job information elements.

So, since you are basically using mock data to test your process, you also use mock job information elements for the same purpose. The sample job information and the sample data file should work together to provide as accurate a representation as possible of the actual runtime job information and data.

The sample job information elements must be entered manually using the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program. The information you enter is, of course, static and to try various possibilities you have to change it manually each time you run your process in Debug mode.

Bear in mind, when entering this information, that different types of inputs have different job information elements and numbers:

- If your initial input is a Serial input task, for instance, the information you enter as sample job info 1 must correspond to the input file's name.
- If your initial input is a email input task, on the other hand, the information you enter as sample job info 1 must correspond to the date on which the email is received.

A) The job information elements used in Debug mode must be manually entered as sample job information elements.

Sample job information is only used as mock job information for initial inputs. This is because secondary input tasks work the same in Debug mode as they do at runtime, and therefore use actual dynamic job information elements.

Related topics:

- Variable Properties
- Standard Variables
- Custom Job Info Variables

4.12 Custom Variables

Can I use other variables to store and communicate information?

There are two ways to store and communicate variable information (strings) at runtime:

- You can use available job info variables: Standard job information elements are typically stored in job info variables 1 to 5, which leaves job info variables 6 to 9 for other variable information needs (note that you may in fact use variables 1 to 5 as well to store any information, but that by doing so you may be overwriting actual job information elements). Job info variables can be used in any task. They have no default value.
- You can use custom variables: You can have as many custom variables as required and you can give them meaningful names. Note that if you decide to rename a variable that was already used in various tasks, you will also have to edit the variable name in each one of those tasks. Custom variables are stored in configuration files and can be can be local or global. Each local variable is associated with a given process and can only be used in tasks included in that same process. Global variables on the other hand are associated with the configuration as a whole and can therefore be used in any task. All custom variables can be seen listed in the Configuration Components window. Each one can be given a default value.

A) Local custom variable associated with the Startup process. B) Global custom variable.

You can set both job information or custom variables using Set Job Info action tasks. To do the same using scripting methods, refer to Using Scripts (Page 0).

Both job info variables and custom variables may be used as variable properties in variable property boxes (see Variable Properties (Page 0)).

A) Standard variables. B) The five basic job info variables, typically used to store and communicate job information elements. C) Job information variables 6 to 9, typically used to store and communicate any information. D) The Local variables and Global variables sub-menus, which can be used to select custom variables.

4.13 Selecting Documents in Tasks

Which options do I have when selecting documents in an output or action task?

The properties dialog box of some action and output tasks let you select documents. When you add a PlanetPress Fax output task to your process, for example, you must tell select PlanetPress Fax which document to use to create the fax.

In most cases, you have three options:

- You can choose not to use any document (note that this option can be used with neither PlanetPress Fax nor PlanetPress Image output tasks).
- You can choose a specific document, or if you prefer a document that be used in every case at run-time.
- You can choose a variable document (see below for more detailed information).

A) Documents list box as displayed in two different properties dialog boxes. The None option (or passthrough option) always appears at the top of the list. Below is the dynamic document name box, which is in fact a variable property. Available documents are then listed in alphabetical order by document names. Available documents may be sort by clicking the list headings. Click the same heading again to resort the list in reverse order. Drag borders to resize the columns.

4.13.1 Variable Document Names

You may want to use a different document with each job, when creating an output or action task for which you can select a document. So instead of creating a Printer Queue Output task to print standard bank statements and another one to print executive statements, for example, you would create a single task that would be able to dynamically pick the proper statement on the fly for each job.

A) Variable (or dynamic) document name selected in the properties of a PlanetPress Image output task. When PlanetPress Watch/Server processes this task, it looks in the data at the location indicated in this box to determine the name of the proper document.

To achieve this, we have integrated a variable property box (see Variable Properties (Page 0)) in the document list. You may click this field and manually enter a variable document name, or you may use the options available via the right-click menu. You can even use a combination of variable and static text. Let us say you use the following dynamic filename: **"%O.ptk"** (the quotation marks are only used to set the filename apart from the rest of the text—you should not use these quotes). At runtime the **"%O"** part will be dynamically replaced by the data file's original file name with the extension removed and the static "**.ptk**" extension will be added. So if a data file named "**Bill.txt**" is received, for example, the document **"Bill.ptk"** would be dynamically selected.

Related topics:

- Variable Properties (Page 0)

4.14 Sending Job Info Variables to Output Devices

Can I send job info variables to output devices, such as printers?

You can send the information stored in job info variables directly to the devices or software that generate your output. This is in fact the simplest way for PlanetPress Watch/Server to forward any available job information elements to any output device or application.

Using job info variables to send information to output devices also has an important advantage: it does not change the structure of the data in any way, since the information is attached as a sort of header.

The option that adds the job information to the document is selected by default, but may be disabled. Note that this option is only available when a PlanetPress Design document is selected.

A) This option must be selected in order for the job information elements to be sent to the output device.

Refer to PlanetPress Design documentation to know how to use job information elements (job info variables) in PlanetPress Design documents. Note that PlanetPress Design provides an option to ignore job info variables received from PlanetPress Watch/Server.

Related topics:

- Job Information Elements and Job Info Variables
- Custom Job Info Variables

4.15 Working with Tasks in the PlanetPress Process Area

What are some techniques I should know to work with tasks in the PlanetPress Watch/Server Process area?

A process is nothing but a group of tasks intercepting data, possibly changing the source data, and finally sending output data to a given output location, application or device. Everything that happens in a processes is performed by a task.

As the creator of a configuration, you add, define, edit and possibly delete tasks from PlanetPress Watch/ Server processes using the Process area. You can use this area's right-click menu to rapidly add, replace, delete, cut, copy and paste tasks, as well as edit their properties. This menu can also be used to switch processes and perform various other tasks.

Editing the properties of a given task is done via that task's properties dialog box.

A) Tasks, conditions, branches and comments that can be added to the current process via the right-click menu.

The Process area also lets you drag-and-drop tasks, branches, conditions and comments to rearrange them within the process. When you do this, the item you drag is repositioned before the item over which you drag it.

Note that every item in a process may not be dragged to any location. Output task, for instance, cannot be dragged and dropped. It is also impossible to drag and drop anything over an initial input task.

A) Dragging and dropping the Text condition branch over the SNMP condition branch. Note how the cursor changes to indicate that the drop location is valid. B) The result of operation performed on the left is that the Text condition is now placed before the SNMP condition branch.

You can also copy branches, conditions and tasks by **CTRL**+dragging them. The new branch, condition or task appears before the branch, condition or task over which you **CTRL**+dragged it.

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

A) CTRL-Dragging the SNMP condition branch over the Text condition branch. B) The result of operation performed on the left is that a new SNMP condition branch now appears before the Text condition branch.

You can also paste the properties of task to another task of the same type. To do this, simply copy a task, then select another task of the same type and choose Paste properties from the right-click menu.

Finally, you can perform all the available cut and paste operations, except for drag-and-drop, between the various processes included in your configuration. For example, you can cut a condition from a process, switch to another process and paste the condition to this other process.

Related topics:

- Adding Branches
- Adding Tasks
- Adding Comments
- Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments
- Removing Tasks and Branches
- Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches
- Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

4.16 Adding Branches

Why are there two ways to add new branches and what is the difference between both methods?

The PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program offers two different commands when it comes to adding new branches to a process:

- You can simply add a new branch ending with an unknown task.
- You can add a new branch by moving the selected task, branch, condition or comment and all its children to the new branch. Since every task is removed from the selected branch, an unknown task replaces the moved output task.

A) Main branch of a given process. B) If you select the Add/Remove Text task on the main branch and choose the Insert | Branch command, PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration adds a new branch above the selected task. C) If you select the same Add/Remove Text task, but choose the Branch from here command instead, PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration also adds a new branch, but this time it moves the selected task and all its children to that new branch. D) Since the branch on which the selected task was located (in this case, the main branch) is left empty, an unknown task is automatically added.

The big difference is in the order in which the tasks included in the process are performed, as illustrated below.

Note that the order in which tasks are performed may or may not have an impact on the outcome of the process as a whole. It goes without saying the order is very important when some tasks depend on processing done by other tasks included in the same process.

For detailed instructions on how to add branches, refer to Insert a Branch or Branch from Here. For information on how conditional branches are added, refer to Conditions.

Related topics:

- Adding Tasks
- Editing Tasks or Branches
- Adding Comments
- Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments
- Removing Tasks and Branches
- Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches
- Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

4.17 Detailed Directions

The section includes the following procedures:

- Insert a Branch (Page 0)
- Branch from Here (Page 0)
- Add a Task (Page 0)
- Edit a Task (Page 0)
- Add or Edit a Comment (Page 0)
- Replace a Task, Condition, Branch or Comment (Page 0)
- Remove Tasks or Branches (Page 0)
- Cut and Paste, or Copy and Paste a Task or Branch (Page 0)
- Move a Task, Branch or Comment Using Drag-and-Drop (Page 0)
- Duplicate a Task, Branch or Comment Using Drag-and-Drop (Page 0)
- Copy and Paste Properties between Tasks, Conditions or Comments (Page 0)
- Disable or Enable a Task or Branch (Page 0)

4.18 Adding Tasks

How are tasks added to a PlanetPress Watch/Server process?

To add a task, you typically select a task or branch and use the **Insert** menu. The new task is typically added above the selected task. This behavior differs in two cases: if you select an unknown input task and add an input task, or if you select an unknown output task and add an output task. In both cases, the added task replaces the unknown task instead of being added above it.

When you add an output task, a new branch leading to that new task is added above the selected task or branch.

For general instructions on this topic, refer to Add a Task. For detailed instructions on how to add a task, refer to the corresponding section in the following chapters: Input Tasks, Output Tasks or Action Tasks.

Related topics:

- Adding Branches
- Editing Tasks or Branches
- Adding Comments
- Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments
- Removing Tasks and Branches
- Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches
- Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

4.19 Editing Tasks or Branches

How can I edit the properties of existing tasks or branches?

Only when you add a task is a dialog box displayed to let you configure its properties. But you can change the properties associated with any task or branch at any time to fine tune your process. You may even do it while your process is running in Debug mode.

For instructions on how to edit a branch, refer to Edit Branch Settings. For information on how to edit a task, see Edit a Task.

Related topics:

- Adding Branches
- Adding Tasks
- Adding Comments
- Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments
- Removing Tasks and Branches
- Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches
- Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

4.20 Adding Comments

What purpose do comments serve in PlanetPress Watch/Server?

Comments do not do anything as such, but they can be used for various purposes:

- You can use them to map out the various functions you want your process to perform. Imagine adding a number of branches to a process and at the same time adding comments reminding you what the purpose of each one will be.
- They may be used to remind you of various considerations having to do with the tasks included in your process.
- You can use them to help others understand your processes better and faster.

The text of comments appear in the data stream adjacent to each corresponding Comment task.

A) Comment explaining what the branch is doing.

See Add or Edit a Comment.

Related topics:

- Adding Branches
- Adding Tasks
- Editing Tasks or Branches
- Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments
- Removing Tasks and Branches
- Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches
- Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

4.21 Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments

How can I replace existing tasks, conditions, branches or comments?

When you want to add a given task, condition, branch or comment to a process, you may simply do so, but you also have the option to replace existing items using the **Edit** menu's **Replace** command.

Although you would typically replace a task by another task, you may also replace any item by any other item, regardless of their nature. Note that if you replace a branch by a task, all the branch's children branches and tasks will be replaced by the new task. If you replace a conditional branch by a task, all the branches and tasks appearing on the True side of the branch will be replaced by the new task.

When you use the **Replace** command and choose a new task, branch or comment, you must set its properties just as if it was a brand new task, branch or comment.

For general instruction on this topic, refer to Replace a Task, Condition, Branch or Comment. For detailed instructions on how to replace an existing task, condition, branch or comment, refer to the corresponding section in the following chapters: Input Tasks, Output Tasks or Action Tasks.

Note finally that you can also paste properties from task to task.

Related topics:

- Adding Branches
- Adding Tasks
- Editing Tasks or Branches
- Adding Comments
- Removing Tasks and Branches
- Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches
- Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

4.22 Removing Tasks and Branches

How can I remove tasks and branches and what is the impact on the process?

All the tasks in a process cannot be removed the same way. Most of the tasks included in a process can be removed simply by pressing a keyboard key for instance, but initial input tasks and output tasks cannot be removed this way.

There are two ways to remove branches, each leading to different results:

- You can remove a selected branch. This deletes the branch with all its tasks. Bear in mind that a branch is always considered to be a 'secondary branch' in opposition to a 'main branch', and that it is always located to the right of the 'main branch'. In other words, to delete a branch is the equivalent of deleting any task located to the right of a branch crossing. In the case of a conditional branch, it is the tasks appearing on the True side of the condition that are deleted from the process.
- You can delete the branch located below a selected crossing. This deletes the 'main branch' with all its tasks and moves the 'secondary branch' to the location previously occupied by the 'main branch' branch. In the case of a conditional branch, it is the tasks appearing on the False side of the condition that are deleted from the process.

A) Original process. B) Tasks and branches located to the right of the selected (greyed) branch. C) Tasks and branches located below the selected branch. D) The process after the Delete key was pressed while the first branch in the original process was selected. E) The process after the Shift+CTRL+Delete key combination was pressed while the first branch in the original process was selected.

For detailed instructions, refer to Remove Tasks or Branches.

Related topics:

- Disabling and Enabling Tasks and Branches
- Adding Branches
- Adding Tasks
- Editing Tasks or Branches
- Adding Comments
- Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments
- Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches
- Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

4.23 Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches

How can I cut and paste, or copy and paste tasks and branches ?

When you want to add, remove or move a given task or branch, you may simply do so (see Adding Tasks and Removing Tasks and Branches), but you also have the option to cut and paste, or copy and paste tasks and branches between different processes.

When you cut a task, it typically disappears from the process, but if it was either the process' initial input task or an output task, it is replaced by an unknown task, which you then have to configure.

When you paste a task, it is typically added above the selected task. But if you copied an input task, selected an unknown input task, and pasted the task, it would replace the unknown task. The same thing happens with output tasks.

When you cut a branch, all its tasks also disappear from the process. When you copy a branch, all its tasks are also copied. When you paste a branch, all its tasks are also pasted to the process.

When you cut a conditional branch, all the tasks appearing on the True side of the condition also disappear from the process. When you copy a conditional branch, all the tasks appearing on the True side of the condition are also copied. When you paste a conditional branch, all the tasks appearing on the True side of the condition are also pasted to the process.

For instructions, refer to Cut and Paste, or Copy and Paste a Task or Branch.

Related topics:

- Adding Branches
- Adding Tasks
- Editing Tasks or Branches
- Adding Comments
- Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments
- Removing Tasks and Branches
- Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

4.24 Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop

What is the simplest way to move tasks, branches and comments?

When you want to move a given task, branch or comment, the simplest way is to use drag-and-drop. Note that contrary to the cut and paste method, the drag-and-drop method only lets you paste tasks, branches and comments to the *current* process.

When you move a task, branch or comment using drag and drop, it typically moves from its original location to a position immediately preceding the target onto which you dropped it. But if you drop an input task over an unknown input task, the moved task will replace the unknown task. The same will happen if you drag an output task over an unknown output task. Note that it is impossible to drag-and-drop any task over a configured initial input task.

When you move a branch, all its tasks are also moved. When you move a conditional branch, all the tasks appearing on the True side of the condition are also moved.

A) Dragging-and-dropping a task over another task. The cursor changes shape to indicate a permitted move. B) The Rename action in its new location.

A) Trying to drag-and-drop a task over a configured initial input task (a crossed-circle indicates a non-permitted move).

For instructions, refer to Move a Task, Branch or Comment Using Drag-and-Drop.

Related topics:

- Adding Branches
- Adding Tasks
- Editing Tasks or Branches

- Adding Comments
- Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments
- Removing Tasks and Branches
- Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches
- Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

4.25 Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop

What is the simplest way to duplicate tasks, branches and comments?

When you want to duplicate a given task, branch or comment, the simplest way is to use drag-and-drop. Note that contrary to the copy and paste method, the drag-and-drop method only lets you duplicate tasks, branches and comments within the *current* process.

When you duplicate a branch, all its tasks are also duplicated. When you duplicate a conditional branch, all the tasks appearing on the True side of the condition are also duplicated.

For instructions, refer to Duplicate a Task, Branch or Comment Using Drag-and-Drop.

Related topics:

- Adding Branches
- Adding Tasks
- Editing Tasks or Branches
- Adding Comments
- Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments
- Removing Tasks and Branches
- Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches
- Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

4.26 Copying and Pasting Properties between Task, Conditions or Comments

Can I paste properties between tasks, conditions or comments?

When you want replace a given task, you may simply do so, but you also have the option to copy a task and paste its properties to other tasks, even if they are in different processes.

Pasting all the properties of a task onto a task of a different type is the equivalent of pasting the task itself. Note that you can also paste only the On Error properties.

The pasting of properties is not permitted in all cases. You cannot paste the properties of an action task onto a condition, for example. Consult the table below for detailed information.

Paste from (below) to (right)	Input	Output	Action	Condition	Comment
Initial Input	**Yes**	**No**	**No**	**No**	**No**
Secondary Input	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes
Output	No	Yes	No	No	No
Action	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes
Condition	No	No	No	Yes	No
Comment	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes

For instructions, refer to Copy and Paste Properties between Tasks, Conditions or Comments.

Related topics:

- Adding Branches
- Adding Tasks
- Editing Tasks or Branches
- Adding Comments
- Replacing Tasks, Conditions, Branches or Comments
- Removing Tasks and Branches
- Moving Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop
- Cutting and Pasting, or Copying and Pasting Tasks and Branches
- Duplicating Tasks, Branches and Comments Using Drag-and-Drop

4.27 Disabling and Enabling Tasks and Branches

Can I ignore tasks and branches and then decide to use them again?

PlanetPress Watch/Server lets you ignore individual tasks, branches or conditions.

- When a task is disabled, it is not performed by PlanetPress Watch/Server.
- When a branch is disabled, all the tasks appearing on the right side of the branch are also ignored. In the case of conditional branches, this means that the tasks appearing on the True side are ignored.

A task, branch or condition that was previously disabled out can be re-enabled at any time. Note that commented tasks will also not be performed when you use the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program to go through a process in debug mode.

Bear in mind that, as always, changes to a PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration are only applied once the updated configuration has been sent to PlanetPress Watch/Server.

Related topics:

- Removing Tasks and Branches

5 Data in PlanetPress Watch

PlanetPress Watch/Server is a versatile tool that can capture various types of data files and dispatch this data to various PlanetPress Design documents. To fully understand PlanetPress Watch/Server and how it treats data, you must understand how it is integrated into PlanetPress Design.

This section covers issues relating to the sample data used to create your PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration and to the actual data that PlanetPress Watch/Server will send to PlanetPress Design documents. It is an important section which you should fully understand before you start creating your configuration. Also included in this section are procedures that let you make data selections as well as get data from the sample data file.

Since many of the concepts and explanations included in this chapter are closely related to concepts and explanations found in the *PlanetPress Design User Guide*, we suggest that you review this document, especially the *Selecting an Emulation* section.

In this section, you learn to:

- Use the Data Selector (Page 117)
- Choose a Line Printer, CSV, ASCII, Channel Skip or XML Sample Data File (Page 120)
- Choose a Database Type Sample Data File (Page 120)
- Reopen a Sample Data File (Page 122)
- Add or Edit Data Selections (Page 123)
- Get Data (Page 124)

5.1 Multiple Sample Data Files

A single PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration can incorporate multiple "data streams". What this means is that a single configuration can receive differently structured data files from various sources and that it can send those data files to various PlanetPress Design documents.

You can structure your configuration in various ways, but you should remember that a given PlanetPress Watch/Server process can only have a single initial input task, and that a given PlanetPress Watch/Server output task can only send data to PlanetPress Design documents that share the same data structure.

- If your configuration is only going to receive data files that share the same structure from a single source type (serial inputs, for instance), it will typically include a single process. Since your process is only going to send data to various PlanetPress Design documents that were created using sample data files that share the same structure, it can include a single output task.
- If your configuration is going to receive data files that *do not* share the same structure from a single source type (serial inputs, for instance), it will also typically include a single process. Since your process is going to send data to PlanetPress Design documents that were created using sample data files that *do not* share the same structure, it must include multiple output tasks.
- If your configuration is going to receive data files from multiple source types (ftp and serial inputs, for example), it will necessarily include multiple processes.If your processes are only going to send data to PlanetPress Design documents that were created using sample data files that share the same structure, they can each include a single output task. If, on the other hand, they are going to send data to PlanetPress Design documents that were created using sample data files that *do not* share the same structure, they will each typically include multiple output tasks.

Note that there are many reasons why you may want to add additional processes and output tasks to a given configuration. Schedule considerations are a good example. You may, for instance, need a process that runs 24 hours a day to capture incoming data on the spot, and another process that runs at night and that picks up data generated by the first for additional processing.

A process that sends data to PlanetPress Design documents that *do not* share the same data structure needs condition tasks, so as to be able to route each data file to the appropriate document. To edit and test such a process, you will also need to use multiple sample data files. To create and edit those branches that lead to PlanetPress Design documents that share the same data structure, you will choose a first sample data file. Then to create and edit other branches leading to PlanetPress Design documents with a different data structure, you will choose a second sample data file, and so on. Bear in mind that each sample data file is associated with a given process, so to change the sample data file associated with a given process, you must first select this process.

What all this translates into is that to plan out the structure of your configuration, you should typically begin by listing all your inputs, outputs and PlanetPress Design documents, and you should then draw up a flowchart to visually assemble them all. You should then add the additional input tasks and the action action tasks needed to complete your whole configuration. This will tell you more surely then anything whether you need a single process or multiple processes.

5.2 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed procedures that explain how to use sample data in PlanetPress Watch/Server. It contains the following topics:

5.2.1 Use the Data Selector

The procedures below explain how to navigate the pages (or record sets in the case of a database emulation) of a sample data file, and adjust the content and appearance of the Data Pane.

You use the Data Selector in different contexts in PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration. Each context has its own method for accessing the Data Selector. The contexts are to:

- Associate a sample data file with the document and set the emulation the process uses initially.
- Make a data selection in the properties dialog box of a task.
- Configure the emulation used in a Change Emulation action.

To navigate the pages (or record sets) of the sample data file:

- In the Data page box, enter a page number.
  You may also use the spin buttons or press **SHIFT**+**PAGEDOWN** or **SHIFT**+**PAGEUP**. PlanetPress Watch/Server updates the contents of the Data Pane of the Data Selector. Note that the Data Selector's Pages in buffer option has an impact on selections made in the Data page box. If you enter 2 in the Pages in buffer box and 1 in the Data page box, for example, the Data Pane will display pages 1 and 2 at the same time. If you then enter 2 in the Data page box, the Data Pane will display pages 3 and 4.
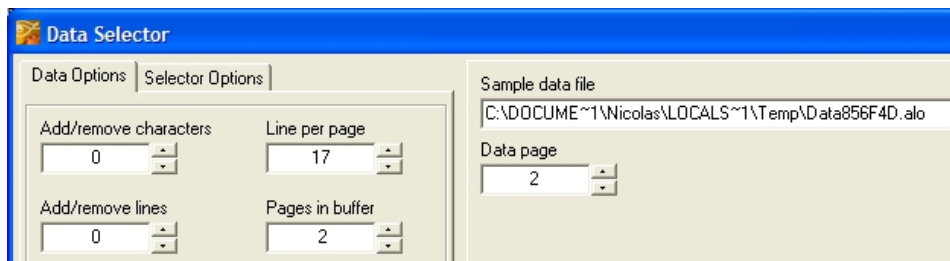
To adjust the content and appearance of the Data Pane:

1. In the Data Selector, click the **Selector Options** tab.
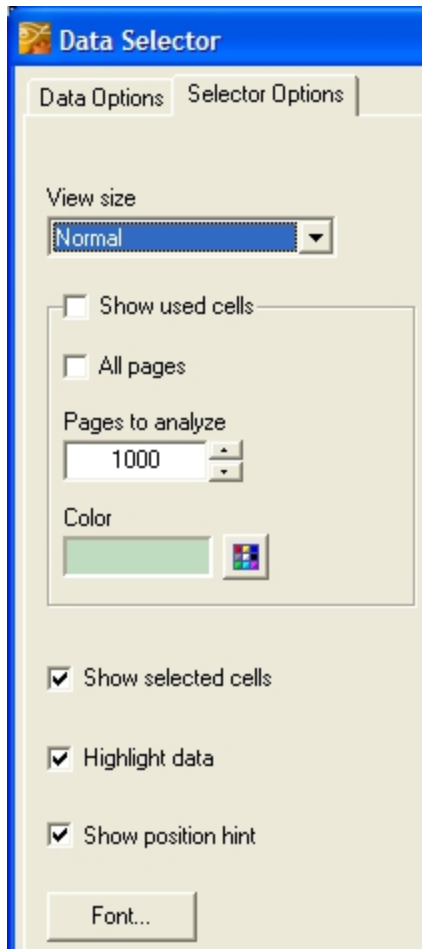
2. Adjust the following options as required. Note that none of the these options are enabled when an XML sample data file is selected and that only the View size option is enabled when a database sample data file is selected.

View size: Use to adjust the size of the cells in the Data Pane.

Show used cells: Select to display cells that contain data with a specific background color (as indicated in the Color box below). The PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program scans either all the pages in the sample data file (if the All pages option below is selected), or a given number of pages (if a number is entered in the Pages to analyze box below) to indicate the maximum number of cells used on each line. If, for example, you use a 3 page sample data file, with no data on the second line of page 1, 12 characters of data on the same line of page 2, and 15 characters of data on the same line of page three, then the fifteen first cells of the second line of data would be highlighted regardless of the selected page. This is very useful when making data selections, as it can help you determine how many cells to select to ensure that no information is truncated. Note that it cannot be used with user-defined emulations.

All pages: Select to enable the Show used cells functionality for all pages in the data file. For large data files, this can use a significant portion of system resources. Selecting this option disables the Pages to analyze property.

Pages to analyze: Enter the number of pages of the data file to scan for the Show used cells functionality. The more pages are analyzed, the more system resources are used. Disable the All pages option to have access to this option. You can use the spin buttons to increment the number of pages up or down.

Color: Displays the background color associated with the Show used cells option. Use the button located to the right to display the Color Picker and change the associated color.

Show selected cells: This option is only valid in PlanetPress Design.

Highlight data: Select to highlight data from the sample data file in selected cells of fields. This makes it easy to distinguish non-printable characters in the data file from empty cells in the Data Pane.

Show position hint: Select to display the reference information of the selected cells in a tool tip.

3. Adjust the font the Data Selector uses to display data in the Data Pane (see below). Note that the font cannot be changed when an XML sample data file is selected.

To set the font the Data Selector uses:

1. In the **Data Selector**, click the **Selector Options** tab.
2. Click **Select Font**.
    The Font dialog box appears.
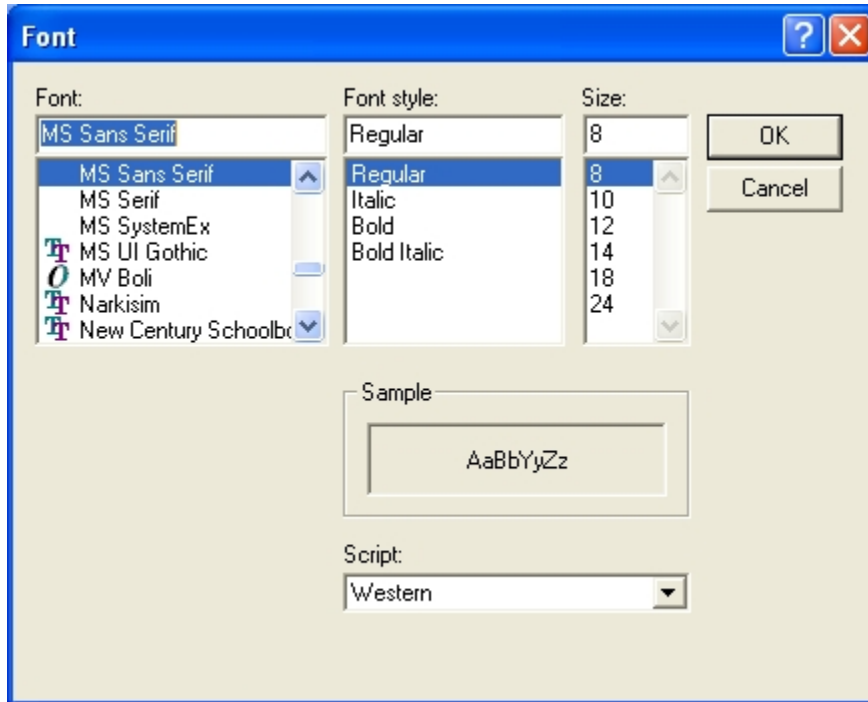
3. In the **Font** dialog box, set the following font options.
    Font: Select the font you want to use to display the sample data file in the Data Pane. If your input data contains characters outside the standard ASCII character set, select a font that can represent the characters in your input data.
    Font style: Select attributes for the font selected in the Font box.
    Size: Select the point size for the font selected in the Font box.
    Sample: Displays a preview of the font selected in the Font box, at the weight and size selected in the Font style and Size boxes, respectively, and using the encoding table selected in the Script box.
    Script: Select the system-level encoding table you want to use for the font selected in the Font box. An encoding table determines the font glyph that displays or prints for a given character in the input data. The encoding tables available here are those available on the system on which you are running PlanetPress Watch/Server. You cannot edit the system-level encoding table. If you see discrepancies between the glyphs that represent your sample data file in the Data Pane and those that appear in the data selections on the document page, the source of the discrepancy may be the encoding tables. The encoding table that appears by default in the Script box depends on the language selected for the PlanetPress Design user interface. If the user interface is set to English, the default is the Windows default encoding table. For languages that use extended ASCII, the default is ISO-Latin 1. If you select an Asian font, the specific encoding table it uses is indicated in its name, with an indication of whether the font displays vertically or horizontally.
4. Click **OK**.
    PlanetPress Watch/Server exits the Font dialog box and returns to the Data Selector. The Data Pane updates to reflect the changes to the font.

Related topics:

-
-

5.2.2 Choose a Line Printer, CSV, ASCII, Channel Skip or XML Sample Data File

The procedure below describes how to choose a Line Printer, CSV, ASCII, Channel Skip or XML type sample data file for a given process. To choose a database type sample data file, refer to Choose a Database Type Sample Data File (Page 120).

The Data Selector lets you select a sample data file, as well as set the data related options. Bear in mind that in the course of the creation and testing of a given process, you may need to use different sample data files.

The sample data file you associate with a given process typically has the same structure as the one used to create the PlanetPress Design documents to which it will be sending data. The data related options should also be the same as those used in PlanetPress Design. At any rate, the emulation and options you choose must correspond to the content and structure of the data that the process' initial input task will be receiving.

For more information on the available emulations and options, refer to PlanetPress Design documentation.

To choose a Line Printer, CSV, ASCII, Channel Skip or XML type sample data file:

1. Select the process with which you want to associate the sample data file.
2. Choose **Debug** | **Sample Data File** | **Select**.
   The **Data Selector** opens.

3. Click ⟳ (this button should appear to the right of the **Sample data file** box—if a different button is displayed, choose a different option in the Emulation box) to open the **Select a sample data file** dialog box and navigate to a Line Printer, CSV, ASCII, Channel Skip or XML sample data file. Once you have made your selection, click **OK** to close the **Select a sample data file** dialog box.
   As the selected sample data file opens, the data related options displayed in the **Data Selector** change to the default settings associated with the data type detected by the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program.
4. Change the data related settings as required. Refer to the settings used to create the document to which the process' output tasks will be sending data. Remember that if the selected process will be sending data to multiple documents created using sample data files that do not have the same structure, you will have to proceed step by step, choosing a different sample data file for each "document type". For more information on the various emulations and data related settings, refer to PlanetPress Design documentation.

Related topics:

-
-
-
-
-

5.2.3 Choose a Database Type Sample Data File

The procedure below describes how to choose a Database type sample data file for a given process. To choose a Line Printer, CSV, ASCII, Channel Skip or XML type sample data file, refer to Choose a Line Printer, CSV, ASCII, Channel Skip or XML Sample Data File (Page 120).

The Data Selector lets you select a sample data file, as well as set the data related options. Bear in mind that in the course of the creation and testing of a given process, you may need to use different sample data files.

The sample data files you associate with each process should have the same structure as those used to create the PlanetPress Design documents to which its output tasks will be sending data. The data related options should also typically be the same as those used in PlanetPress Design (for more information on these options, such as the emulation options, refer to PlanetPress Design documentation).

         PLANETPRESS. SUITE

To choose a database sample data file:

1. Select the process with which you want to associate the sample data file.
2. Choose **Debug** | **Sample Data File** | **Select**.
   The Data Selector opens.

3. Click   (this button should appear to the right of the Sample data file box—if a different button is displayed, choose the Database option in the Emulation box).
   The Database Connection dialog box appears.
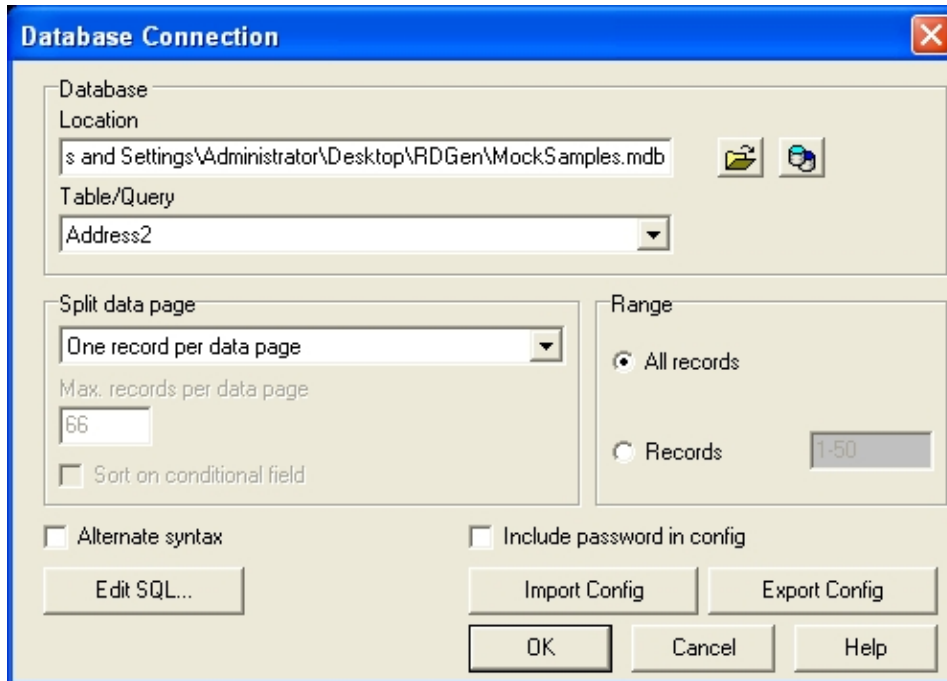
Database

4. Do one of the following:

   ▪ To use a database file, enter the path of the file in the **Location** box. You can also click   to open the **Open Database** dialog box. Once you have made your selection, click **OK** to close the Open Database dialog box.
   ▪ To import a previously exported database configuration, click **Import Config** located at the bottom of the dialog box. This opens the **Import Database Configuration** dialog box. Once you have selected your configuration, click **OK** to close this dialog box.

   ▪ To connect to an ODBC data source, click   to open the **Select Data Source** dialog box. For more information on this dialog box, refer to Windows documentation. Once you have made your selection, click **OK** to close this dialog box.
   Once you have selected the appropriate database file, database configuration or ODBC data source, the available tables or queries are displayed in the **Table/query** box of the **Database Connection** dialog box.

5. If the table or query containing the information you need as your sample data file is available in the list displayed in the **Table/query** box, select it. Otherwise, select **Advanced Query** and create the query as indicated below.
6. To create an advanced SQL query (if you selected **Advanced Query** above), do the following:
7. Click **Edit SQL**.
   The **Advanced SQL Statement** dialog box appears.
8. To display a list of available tables, click **Show Tables**.
9. Enter your SQL query.
10. If your query uses an alternate syntax, select the **Alternate syntax (not recommended)** option.
11. To test your SQL query, click **Test SQL**.
12. Click **OK** to save your advanced query and close the **Advanced SQL Statement** dialog box.

Split data page
13. Set the options that will determine how the data file should be broken up into multiple pages:
In the first box, select the initial condition used to determine when to end the current data page and to start a new one. Refer to the settings used to create the document to which the process' output tasks will be sending data. Remember that if the selected process will be sending data to multiple documents created using sample data files that do not have the same structure, you will have to proceed step by step, choosing a different sample data file for each "document type". For more information on the various emulations and data related settings, refer to PlanetPress Design documentation.
   - To create a new data page for each record in the selected database table or query, select **One record per data page**.
   - To create a new data page every time a given number records has been reached in the selected database table or query, select **Several records per data page** and enter the number of records in the **Maximum number of records per record set** box below.
   - To create a new data page every time the current value of a given field changes, select **When [Field Name] changes**.
   - To limit the number of records per page, enter a maximum value in the **Maximum number of records per record set** box (cannot exceed 4,000).
   - Select the **Sort on condition field** option to use the field selected above (if any) to sort the records in the table or query before going through the file to create the pages. This option groups records with the same value in the selected field and ensures that they will be on the same data page (unless if the maximum number of records per record set has been reached).
   Range
14. Set the number of records you want to include in the sample data file. The more records you use, the more special cases you may encounter and the more potential errors you may eliminate. On the other hand, too large a sample data file may slow down the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program.
All: Select to include all records in the database in the sample data file.
Records: Select to define the range of records you want to include in the sample data file. Enter the range (starting record-ending record, such as in 1-50, for example) in the box to the right.
15. Click **OK**.
The PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program creates its sample data file and displays its contents in the Data Pane of the Data Selector. You can use the **Data page** box to display the various pages in the sample data file.

Related topics:

5.2.4 Reopen a Sample Data File

The Reopen Data File sub-menu can contain as many as nine sample data files, each one appearing in the order in which they were opened last. Note that only those data files that were actually associated with a given configuration are displayed in the Reopen Data File sub-menu.

To Reopen a Sample Data File:

1. Choose **Debug | Reopen Data File**.
2. From the **Reopen Data File** sub-menu, click the data file that you want to reopen.

Related topics:

5.2.5 Add or Edit Data Selections

To add data selections you create references to specific data within the sample data file. At runtime, these references are used to find information within the actual data. Used various in variable property boxes, they add flexibility to your PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration.

To add data selections, you must have chosen a sample data file for the selected process. Note that changing sample data file related settings typically changes data selection results.

Note that for compatibility reasons with earlier versions of PlanetPress Watch/Server, various reference formats are accepted.

To add or edit a data selection:

1. Add or edit any task that uses variable properties in its configuration.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To add a new data selection, right-click anywhere in a variable property box and choose **Select Data** from the pop-up menu.
   - To edit an existing data selection, select the reference of the data selection and choose **Select Data** from the pop-up menu.
     The **Data Selector** appears. If you are adding a new data selection, no data is selected. If you selected a data selection in order to edit it, the referenced data is selected.
3. In the **Data Pane**, click the beginning of the data you want and drag the cursor to include all the information. You may select multiple lines. To ensure that you are selecting all the cells required to correctly reference the data, enable the Highlight data option using Selector Options tab (see Use the Data Selector (Page 117)).
   The references of your selection are indicated in the **From line**, **To line**, **From column** and **To column** boxes.
4. To see the data selected on the various pages of the sample data file, use the **Data page** spin buttons.
5. Set the trim and case properties of the data selection.
   Trim selection: Select to remove blank spaces before and after the content of the data selection.
   Keep case: Select to keep characters in their original casing.
   To uppercase: Select to convert all the characters to uppercase.
   To lowercase: Select to convert all the characters to lower-case.
6. Click **OK**.
   The **Data Selector** is closed and the references of the selected data are added to the variable property box.

Related topics:

- Use the Data Selector (Page 117)
- Choose a Line Printer, CSV, ASCII, Channel Skip or XML Sample Data File (Page 120)
- Choose a Database Type Sample Data File (Page 120)
- Reopen a Sample Data File (Page 122)
- Get Data (Page 124)

5.2.6 Get Data

The Get data command can be used to copy data from the sample data file to any edit box (any box that you can use to manually enter information within a dialog box). This command does not provide any kind of dynamic reference to the actual data that PlanetPress Watch/Server will be processing at runtime.

To use the Get Data command, you must have chosen a sample data file for the selected process.

To get data:

1. Add or edit any task that uses variable properties.
2. Right-click anywhere in an edit box and choose **Get Data** from the pop-up menu
   The **Data Selector** appears.
3. To see the data from a different page, use the **Data page** spin buttons.
4. In the **Data Pane**, click the beginning of the data you want and drag the cursor to include all the information. You may select multiple lines.
   The references of the selected data are indicated in the **From line**, **To line**, **From column** and **To column** boxes.
5. Set the case properties.
   Keep case: Select to keep characters in their original casing.
   To uppercase: Select to convert all the characters to uppercase.
   To lowercase: Select to convert all the characters to lower-case.
6. Click **OK**.
   The **Data Selector** is closed and the selected data is added to the edit box. If multiple lines were selected and the edit box is not multiline, the lines of data are concatenated into a single line.

Related topics:

- Use the Data Selector (Page 117)
- Choose a Line Printer, CSV, ASCII, Channel Skip or XML Sample Data File (Page 120)
- Choose a Database Type Sample Data File (Page 120)
- Reopen a Sample Data File (Page 122)
- Add or Edit Data Selections (Page 123)

6 Input Tasks

Input tasks retrieve data from watched source locations and pass it to subsequent processing tasks and eventually to output tasks.

This section contains detailed information on:

6.1 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on the properties of the available input tasks. It contains the following topics:

6.1.1 Email Input Task Properties

Email input tasks retrieve data through a Microsoft Outlook or POP3 mail client. With Outlook, the email account of the current user on the local computer is used. Note that PlanetPress Watch/Server must run using the same account as the current user, otherwise the task will fail to retrieve the messages.

Emails retrieved using POP3 are deleted from the mail server. Also note that all the messages retrieved using Microsoft Outlook or Outlook Express are deleted from the current user's account. To keep copies of the deleted emails, use the **Move message after processing to folder** option.

Bear in mind that emails can be selected based on subject and sender or recipient address.

If you use Email input tasks to capture data encoded using a Double-Byte character set (such as those used for Japanese or Chinese, for instance), it is preferable to use attachments rather than the email body to carry the data from its source to the input task, as data corruption is less likely to occur using this method.

The following describes those properties that are specific to email input tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

Email input task properties are as follows:

General tab

Message body: Select to use the data found in the body of the email.

Attached file: Select to use the data found in the email's attachment. If both the **Message body** and **Attached files** options are selected, the message's body and the message's attachment are treated as separate data files and processed one after the other.

Unzip attached file: Select to unzip the attached files.

Zip password: Enter the password required to unzip the attached files (if any). Note that you can use variables and data selections.

Conditions group

"Subject" contains: Select to limit those messages used by this task to those with a specific subject. The subject you enter in the box below can include variables and wildcards.

Nothing: Select to limit those messages used by this task to those that do not specify any subject.

"From" contains: Select to limit those messages used by this task to those that are sent from a specific address. The address you enter in the box below can include variables and wildcards.

"To" contains: Select to limit those messages used by this task to those that are sent to a specific address. The address you enter in the box below can include variables and wildcards.

login tab

Use Microsoft Outlook: Select to use the Microsoft Outlook email account of the current user to receive emails. This property cannot be used unless Outlook is properly installed and configured.

Move message after processing to folder: Enter the name of an Outlook Folder to keep copies of the emails taken by this email input task. You should enter only the name of the folder as it appears in Outlook's Folder List area, regardless of whether it is a child of another folder. For example, if you want to use a folder named Bills that is listed under another folder named PassedDue, only enter Bills in the text box. Make sure no two folders have the same name, even if they are under different parent folders, as this could generate errors. Consider creating a special folder in Outlook (perhaps a child of the Deleted Items folder named Watch) and then using that folder as your backup folder.

Use POP3 mail group

Select this option to use a POP3 mail server and to activate this group. Note that emails retrieved via POP3 are always deleted from the server.

Incoming mail (POP3): Enter the address of the incoming POP3 mail server. This box is only enabled when the Use POP3 mail option is selected.

Account name: Enter the email account name on the POP3 mail server. This box is only enabled when the Use POP3 mail option is selected.

Password: Enter the password required to unlock the selected account on the POP3 mail server. This box is only enabled when the Use POP3 mail option is selected.

Related topics:

- Folder Capture Input Task Properties (Page 128)
- FTP Input Task Properties (Page 129)
- HTTP Client Input Task Properties (Page 130)
- HTTP Server Input Task Properties (Page 131)
- Create File Input Task Properties (Page 132)
- Folder Listing Input Task Properties
- LPD Input Task Properties (Page 133)
- Serial Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- Telnet Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- WinQueue Input Task Properties (Page 135)

6.1.2 Folder Listing Input Task Properties

Folder Listing input tasks list the files present in a selected folder and gives you the option to use filename masks, to sort files by name or date, and to list the files present in the selected folder's subfolders. The lists it generates are in XML format.

The following describes the one property specific to Create File input tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as Other and On error properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

Directory Listing input task property is as follows:

GENERAL TAB

Input folder: Enter the path of the folder that contains the files you want listed.

Sorted by: Select either Name or Modified date, depending on how you want the list top be sorted.

File mask: Edit the default filename mask (*.*) if you want only some of the files present in the folder to appear in the list.

List files in sub-directories also: Select this option if you want the task to list any files present in subfolders of the selected input folder.

6.1.3 Folder Capture Input Task Properties

Folder Capture input tasks retrieve data from a specified folder. You can limit the files pulled in from the folder by entering masks for the file that are more specific than the default mask *.* which captures all files in the folder.

The following describes those properties that are specific to Folder Capture input tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

Folder Capture input task properties are as follows:

General tab

Folder: Enter the full path of the folder from which the input files are to be taken.

Masks: Enter a single or multiple file names or use file name masks. Use semi-colons (;) to separate names or masks. Note that if you leave the default mask, the task will retrieve every file in the selected folder.

Sort files by: Select a given sorting method to prompt PlanetPress Watch/Server to sort the files in the source folder before taking them (and thus to take them in a specific order). Select None to let PlanetPress Watch/Server take the files without sorting them first.

Sort order: If you selected a sorting method in the Sort files by box, select the order in which you want the files to be sorted.

Use archive attribute: Select to turn on the archive attribute of the data files found in the source folder and to leave them in their original location (i.e. to take copies of the source files). Note that PlanetPress Watch/Server never takes source files that have their archive attribute turned on (so the source files will not be taken again and again). When this option is turned off, PlanetPress Watch/Server removes data files from the source location.

Capture files in sub-directories also: Select to capture files from child folders of the source folder as well.

Sort directories first: If you selected a sorting method in the Sort files by box, and if you want the folders present in the source folder to be sorted first, select this option.

Include hidden files: Select if you want any hidden folders or files present in the source folder to be taken as well.

Include empty files: Select if you want any empty folders or files present in the source folder to be taken as well.

- Email Input Task Properties (Page 126)
- FTP Input Task Properties (Page 129)
- HTTP Client Input Task Properties (Page 130)
- HTTP Server Input Task Properties (Page 131)
- Create File Input Task Properties (Page 132)
- Folder Listing Input Task Properties
- LPD Input Task Properties (Page 133)
- Serial Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- Telnet Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- WinQueue Input Task Properties (Page 135)

6.1.4 FTP Input Task Properties

FTP input tasks retrieve files from FTP sites using the FTP protocol. Masks are typically used to select multiple files to be retrieved from the server.

The following describes those properties that are specific to FTP input tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

FTP input task properties are as follows:

General tab

FTP Server: Enter the IP address or host name of the FTP server to poll.

User name: Enter the name of a user account on the FTP server.

Password: If account named in the User name box is password protected, enter the password here.

Directory: Enter the path of the folder to poll on the FTP server. If this box is left empty, PlanetPress Watch/Server will poll the root directory.

Masks: Enter a single file name mask. Multiple entries are not allowed in this box.

Connection mode group

Active: Select to prompt PlanetPress Watch/Server to use the active mode when retrieving files from the FTP server.

Passive: Select to prompt PlanetPress Watch/Server to use the passive mode when retrieving files from the FTP server.

- Email Input Task Properties (Page 126)
- Folder Capture Input Task Properties (Page 128)
- FTP Input Task Properties
- HTTP Client Input Task Properties (Page 130)
- HTTP Server Input Task Properties (Page 131)
- Create File Input Task Properties (Page 132)
- Folder Listing Input Task Properties
- LPD Input Task Properties (Page 133)
- Serial Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- Telnet Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- WinQueue Input Task Properties (Page 135)

6.1.5 HTTP Client Input Task Properties

HTTP Client input tasks use the HTTP protocol to issue HTTP GET commands (queries) to HTTP servers. Replies received from the HTTP servers are used as jobfiles and are thus passed on to following tasks.

The following describes those properties that are specific to HTTP Client input tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

For information on secure HTTP communication settings, refer to HTTP Server Input User Options (Page 280).

HTTP Client input task properties are as follows:

General tab

URL: Enter the URL of the HTTP server from which the file must be downloaded. Since this is a variable property box, variables may be used, as well as the Get Data and Select Data commands. Note that when PlanetPress Watch/Server connects to a secure page, an SSL (Secure Socket Layer) connection is automatically used.

Server requires authentication

Check this option if the HTTP server requires user authentication. This enables the following options.

Username: A user name known to the Web server.

Password: The password associated with the username entered above.

- Email Input Task Properties (Page 126)
- Folder Capture Input Task Properties (Page 128)
- FTP Input Task Properties (Page 129)
- HTTP Client Input Task Properties
- HTTP Server Input Task Properties (Page 131)
- Create File Input Task Properties (Page 132)
- Folder Listing Input Task Properties
- LPD Input Task Properties (Page 133)
- Serial Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- Telnet Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- WinQueue Input Task Properties (Page 135)

6.1.6 HTTP Server Input Task Properties

HTTP Server input tasks are used to receive HTTP requests made via GET or POST commands and to send replies to the servers from which the requests were made. The HTTP server supports both http and https.

HTTP Server input tasks are typically used in one of the two following situations:

- HTML Form Action: An HTML form that specifies a server-side form handler sends the request directly from the web browser. PlanetPress Watch/Server replies by returning a file to the requesting browser. The browser could, for instance, send a data file and receive a PDF file generated by PlanetPress Watch/ Server.
- HTTP Data Submission: A custom application or a server sends the request to PlanetPress Watch/Server using either a POST or GET command. The application or server then waits for a response from PlanetPress Watch/Server. This method can be used, for example, to let Print Shop Web send files to PlanetPress Watch/Server for rendering.

Requests generate input that enters the process branch at the task location. The reply sent to the requesting server contains the file generated by the output task located on the same branch. This means that a variety of files may be sent back. If the branch ends with a PlanetPress Image output task, for instance, then the server will likely receive a PDF file. Note that if a Generic Splitter action task is located between the HTTP Server input task and the output task, the reply will contain only the last part of the file.

Since the requesting server must wait until PlanetPress Watch/Server is ready to send data back, it is important to design a process that completes processing as soon as possible. If PlanetPress Watch/Server takes too long to reply, the server will appear to hang from the client's standpoint.

PlanetPress Watch/Server also sends back HTTP status codes with every reply. In case of an error, a generic "500 Internal Server Error" status code is returned and the response file sent to the server contains whatever text was entered in the **HTTP Input Task Properties** dialog box.

To simplify file format handling, PlanetPress Watch/Server converts the input files it receives, including any attached files, to XML. The job files passed on to the following tasks is thus in XML.

Note that access to the PlanetPress Watch/Server HTTP Server is controlled via the Access Manager.

The following describes those properties that are specific to HTTP Server input tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

HTTP Server input task properties are as follows:

HTTP action: Enter the name of the action requested of PlanetPress Watch/Server by the client. If a given process branch generates PDF files, for instance, you could use the action name MAKEPDF. So then, whenever PlanetPress Watch/Server would receive a request mentioning the action MAKEPDF, that input task would be performed and PlanetPress Watch/Server would reply by sending a PDF file back to the server.

MIME Type: Select the MIME type that best suits the files PlanetPress Watch/Server will be receiving as input.

Respond on error: Enter a message to be sent to the client as the output file if the process encounters an error and is unable to send a reply that includes the actual output file.

- Email Input Task Properties (Page 126)
- Folder Capture Input Task Properties (Page 128)
- FTP Input Task Properties (Page 129)
- HTTP Client Input Task Properties (Page 130)
- HTTP Server Input Task Properties
- Create File Input Task Properties (Page 132)
- Folder Listing Input Task Properties
- LPD Input Task Properties (Page 133)
- Serial Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- Telnet Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- WinQueue Input Task Properties (Page 135)

6.1.7 Create File Input Task Properties

Create File input tasks are different from other input tasks in that they do not pull in data from a source location. The data that this task passes along to other task is its own: text or values from variables entered when the task was created or last edited.

Since Create File input tasks are not dependent on data from external sources, they are performed at every polling interval and the process is thus started every time.

The following describes the one property specific to Create File input tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

Create File input task property is as follows:

General tab

Create File: Enter the text to use as the data. You can use the pop-up menu to select variables and control characters.
- Email Input Task Properties (Page 126)
- Folder Capture Input Task Properties (Page 128)
- FTP Input Task Properties (Page 129)
- HTTP Client Input Task Properties (Page 130)
- HTTP Server Input Task Properties (Page 131)
- Create File Input Task Properties
- Folder Listing Input Task Properties
- LPD Input Task Properties (Page 133)
- Serial Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- Telnet Input Task Properties (Page 134)
- WinQueue Input Task Properties (Page 135)

6.1.8 LPD Input Task Properties

LPD (Line Printer Daemon) input tasks retrieve data in the form of print files sent from remote computers using the LPD/LPR protocol. The PlanetPress Watch/Server LPD server starts automatically when a configuration that includes at least one active LPD input task is started.

To prevent conflicts between competing LPD servers, you must not run any other LPD server then the PlanetPress Watch/Server LPD server on PlanetPress Watch/Server workstation.

LPD tasks are configured primarily through user options (see LPD Input User Options (Page 281)). The only LDP information you enter in each LPD task is the queue name.

When you set up the printer queue on the remote computer, you must specify the IP address of the host computer running PlanetPress Watch/Server and the name of the remote printer queue. The queue name entered on the remote computer side must match the queue name set in the LPD input task.

Note that the **Other** tab lets you select job information elements that can retrieve the LPR client's user and computer name, as well as the job name, the source file name and the sender's IP address.

The following describes the one property specific to LDP input tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

LDP input task property is as follows:

General tab

LPD queue name: Enter the queue name specified in the printer queue on the remote computer or computers.
- Email Input Task Properties (Page 126)
- Folder Capture Input Task Properties (Page 128)
- FTP Input Task Properties (Page 129)
- HTTP Client Input Task Properties (Page 130)
- HTTP Server Input Task Properties (Page 131)
- Create File Input Task Properties (Page 132)
- Folder Listing Input Task Properties
- LPD Input Task Properties
- Serial Input Task Properties (Page 134)

-

6.1.9 Serial Input Task Properties

Serial input tasks receive files sent to a serial port on the computer running PlanetPress Watch/Server. All the Serial input tasks in a PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration share the same general properties, which are configured through user options (see Serial Input Service User Options (Page 283)). Only the properties set in the **Other** and **Error** tabs are specific to individual tasks.

Since Serial input tasks have no specific task configurable properties, this section contains no property information. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

-

6.1.10 Telnet Input Task Properties

Telnet input tasks receive files sent to a specific port. If you want PlanetPress Watch/Server to receive data using multiple ports, you must use multiple Telnet input tasks. To turn on or off the Telnet logging option, see the user options (see Telnet Input User Options (Page 284)).

The following describes those properties that are specific to Telnet input tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

Telnet input task properties are as follows:

General tab

Port: Enter the number of the port on which PlanetPress Watch/Server is to listen for Telnet communications. The default port number is 9100. Bear in mind that no two input tasks, whatever their type (Telnet, serial, LDP, etc.), should be listening to the same port.

Description: PlanetPress Watch/Server displays the name of the service or process assigned to the port number entered in the Port box. Note that these are standard Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) descriptions.

-

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

6.1.11 WinQueue Input Task Properties

WinQueue input tasks capture print jobs sent to a Windows printer queue. The jobs may originate from a local user or from remote users.

- Before you go through the following procedure, on the computer running PlanetPress Watch/Server you will need to create a local printer queue that will be used to receive data files in the form of print jobs. This queue should be shared, so as to be able to receive jobs sent from local as well as remote users.
- After you have created this queue, on every remote computer that will be sending data files to PlanetPress Watch/Server you will need to create a printer queue connecting to the PlanetPress Watch/ Server queue.

To ensure that the spooled files created by the PlanetPress Watch/Server queue remain in the spool folder, PlanetPress Watch/Server requires that the queue be paused. Note that the path of the default Windows spool folder is **[OS Drive]:\[OS Folder]\SYSTEM32\SPOOL\PRINTERS.**

Note that when you add or edit a WinQueue input task, if you select a printer queue that is not currently paused, a message will be displayed prompting to pause the printer. Also note that if the selected queue uses enhanced metafile spooling, a message box will be displayed prompting you to disable this option (PlanetPress Watch/Server does not support this feature which provides minimal benefits for PostScript printing).

The following describes the one property specific to WinQueue input tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

WinQueue input task property is as follows:

General tab

Printer queue: Select the PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queue (the one to which data files are going to be sent).

Printer properties group

Advanced printing features: Select to create EMF files for Windows Print Converter action tasks (see Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)). *Note that this option must not be selected when capturing generic text type data*.

Paused: Select to pause the selected printer queue.

Spool file pooling: Select to turn on spool file pooling for the selected printer queue. Note that selecting this feature may cause problems, so *only use it if you know exactly what you are doing*.

7 Output Tasks

Each process must end with an output task, but a single process may also end in a number of output tasks, generating printouts, emails and faxes, for example.

This section contains detailed information on:

- For detailed information on PlanetPress Fax or PlanetPress Image output task properties, refer to the each application's respective chapter.

7.1 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on the properties of the available output tasks. It contains the following topics:

7.1.1 Printer Queue Output Task Properties

Printer Queue output tasks dispatch jobs to selected printer queues. Note that you must have created at least one printer queue before you can add your first Printer Queue output task. Furthermore, to print the data file with a PlanetPress Design document, you must have associated at least one document with a printer queue.

You can select multiple queues in a Printer Queue output tasks and choose exactly how your jobs will be dispatched to the selected printers.

The following describes those properties that are specific to Printer Queue output tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

Printer Queue output task properties are as follows:

General tab

Queues: Select the queues to which you want to send the output.

Documents: Select **None** if you want the data to print as is. Select a specific PlanetPress Design document if you want all the jobs to be printed with that document. To use a document chosen at runtime for each job, enter a dynamic document name using a combination of text, variables and data selections. To enable the dynamic document name box, click inside it. To disable it, press **Enter**. Note that in the later case, you must be certain that the documents that will be chosen at runtime will in fact be available locally or at all the selected printer. Note that PlanetPress Watch/Server will not specify a given document version number, so the latest version will be used by default. To specify a given document version number, you can use an Add Document action task instead of a Printer Queue output, and then use an Add/Remove Text action task to add a version number in the document trigger (for more information, refer to the Control Versions of a Document section of the PlanetPress Design User Guide).

advanced tab

Copies: Enter the number of copies to be printed outputs. Since this is a variable property box, you may enter a fixed value or use a data selection. Note that load balancing options have an impact on how copies are printed as well as on the total number of printed copies.

Load balancing group

Options from this group are only valid if multiple printer queues were selected. They determine how documents are to be sent to the selected queues. Note that if you choose the **No balancing** option, the number of copies will be multiplied by the number of selected printers. If you selected two printer queues and asked for two copies, four copies will be printed in all.

No balancing: No load balancing means that all the selected printer queues get everything.

Split job: Split job means that jobs will be split according to the criteria set in the **Page delimiter** group (see below) and that an equal share of the job file will be sent to each one of the selected printer queues. For a hundred page job, for example, if two queues were selected, each one will get 50 pages.

Queue balancing: Queue balancing means that jobs will be split according to the criteria set in the **Page delimiter** group (see below) and that a share of the job file corresponding to each printer's capacity (as set in the PlanetPress Watch/Server Printer Queue Options dialog box—see Print Using a Windows Driver Output Task Properties (Page 138)) will be sent to each one of the selected printer queues. If two queues were selected, the first one sending jobs to a printer that prints 500 pages a minute, and the second one sending jobs to a smaller printer printing 50 pages a minute, the first queue will receive roughly ten times more pages than the second one.

Round robin: Round robin means that complete jobs will be sent in turn to each one of the selected printer queues. For example, Queue_1 will get the first job, Queue_2 will get the second job, and so forth.

Page delimiter group

These options are enabled when you choose **Split job** or **Queue balancing** load balancing options. They are used to determine how each job is to be split before being sent to the printer queues.

Form feed: Cuts the job file at every form feed character.

Lines per page: Cuts the job file after the specified number of lines.

Keyword: Cuts the job file after each occurrence of the specified keyword (string of characters).

Add job information to the document: Select to prompt PlanetPress Watch to add the available job information elements in the header of the file that will be sent to the selected printer queues. Note that this option is only enabled if a document was selected in the **General** tab.

Custom Trigger: Enter the code of the trigger that will be sent with the data to the selected printer queues. Note that this box is only enabled if **None** was selected in the **General** tab.

Related topics:

- Print Using a Windows Driver Output Task Properties (Page 138)
- FTP Output Task Properties (Page 139)
- Send Email Output Task Properties (Page 140)
- Send to Folder Output Task Properties (Page 142)
- SOAP Client Task Properties (Page 143)
- Delete Output Task Properties (Page 145)

7.1.2 Print Using a Windows Driver Output Task Properties

Printing Using a Windows Driver output tasks are used to send jobs to a local or network printer without going through a PlanetPress Suite printer queue (this plugin requires a special license). Note that this option generates large print files and that it therefore does not provide the same level of speed and performance as the Optimized PostScript Stream and Printer Centric methods (the latter being the fastest and most efficient).

This type of output task does not support the transparency and duotone features, so you should not use it with PlanetPress Design documents that use those features.

You add a Print using a Windows driver output task much in the same way as you add any other type of output task. This printing method differs from the Printer Queue output task method, on the other hand, in that you do not associate the output task with a PlanetPress Suite printer queue, but rather directly with a Windows printer queue. Note that this printing method lets you use any PlanetPress Design document present on the local PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool workstation.

The following describes those properties that are specific to Print using a Windows driver output tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

Print using a Windows driver output task properties are as follows:

Printer queue: Select the queues to which you want to send the output. Note that this is a variable property box, so you can use various schemes to use printer queue names that change with each job at runtime.

Properties: Click to change the current printer queue properties. Note that PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools generate the job file and hands it over with the available print options to the Windows print driver, which takes the relay for the actual printing part, so there is no way for your PlanetPress Suite Worflow Tool to ensure that all the settings you make will be applied to the printed document.

Documents: Select a specific PlanetPress Design document if you want all the jobs to be printed with that document. To use a document chosen at runtime for each job, enter a dynamic document name using a combination of text, variables and data selections. To enable the dynamic document name box, click inside it. To disable it, press Enter. Note that in the later case, you must be certain that the documents that will be chosen at runtime will in fact be available locally or at all the selected printer.

Add job information to the document: Select to prompt your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool to add the available job information elements in the header of the file that will be sent to the selected printer queues.

Related topics:

- Printer Queue Output Task Properties (Page 137)
- FTP Output Task Properties (Page 139)
- Send Email Output Task Properties (Page 140)
- Send to Folder Output Task Properties (Page 142)
- SOAP Client Task Properties (Page 143)
- Delete Output Task Properties (Page 145)

7.1.3 FTP Output Task Properties

FTP output tasks send job files to other computers using the FTP protocol. FTP output tasks should not be confused with Printer Queue output tasks that are associated with FTP Output printer queues. These are typically used to send print jobs to printers using FTP (see FTP Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 241) and Printer Queue Output Task Properties (Page 137)).

The following describes the properties specific to FTP output tasks. Note that some FTP settings used for all FTP output tasks are available via the PlanetPress Watch/Server user options (see FTP Output Service User Options (Page 285)).

For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

FTP output task properties are as follows:

General tab

FTP Server: Enter the IP address or host name of the FTP server.

User name: Enter an FTP server user name.

Password: Enter a password associated with the FTP server user name entered above.

Directory: Enter the directory to which the job files are to be uploaded. If you leave this box empty, the job files are sent to the root directory of the FTP server.

File name: Enter the name under which the output job file will be saved. Consider using a dynamic name, since if you use a static name every new file will overwrite the previous one.

Connection mode group

Active: Select to prompt PlanetPress Watch/Server to use the active mode when sending files to the FTP server.

Passive: Select to prompt PlanetPress Watch/Server to use the passive mode when sending files to the FTP server.

Related topics:

- Printer Queue Output Task Properties (Page 137)
- Print Using a Windows Driver Output Task Properties (Page 138)
- Send Email Output Task Properties (Page 140)
- Send to Folder Output Task Properties (Page 142)
- SOAP Client Task Properties (Page 143)
- Delete Output Task Properties (Page 145)

7.1.4 Send Email Output Task Properties

Send Email output tasks send the data files they receive via email.

The following describes the properties specific to Send Email output tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

Send Email output task properties are as follows:

Recipients tab

To: Enter the email address(es) of the recipient(s). Remember this is a variable property box and you can therefore use various schemes to use email addresses that change with each job at runtime.

Cc: Specify addresses to which copies of the generated emails are to be sent.

Bcc: Specify discreet addresses (other recipients will not be able to see these addresses) to which copies of the generated emails are to be sent.

Subject: Enter the subject of the emails generated by PlanetPress Image for this task. Note that if you use a

data selection in this box, you must be sure that the data that will be selected at runtime will not contain any parentheses, as this would cause the task to fail. If you suspect that the data may contain parentheses, you should use a Run script action task (see Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)) with a Strip() function to strip them out.

Message: Enter the content of the email message. Since this is a variable property box, the text may be personalized using variables and data selections. Note that since this is a variable property box, its content is parsed at runtime. If HTML code is entered or pasted in this box, percent (%) and backslash (/) HTML characters must be doubled otherwise they will be disregarded.

Attachments tab

Use this tab to add the files received by this task (plus any other file that you may choose to attach) to the emails sent by PlanetPress Watch/Server.
Attach input job files: Select to attach the file received by this task to the emails it will generate. If this option is not selected, the recipients will not receive any of the data file.

File: Select additional files to include as attachments. You may enter the file name directly and use text, variables and data selections. You may also use the Browse button to navigate and select the file. To add the file to list displayed in the Attach box, you must the click the downward pointing arrow button.

Attach: Lists the files that will be attached to the messages sent from PlanetPress Watch/Server for this task. Selecting the Attach output file(s) option adds these files at the top of the list. Any other file that may have been added using the File box (above) is also listed here.

Zip mode: Select how you want the files checked in the Attach box to be zipped. Select Zip individually to have PlanetPress Watch/Server create a zip file for each file. Select Archive and Zip if you prefer to have one zip file that contains all the attached files.

Zip file name: Enter the name of the one zip file that will be created if the Archive and Zip option was selected in the Attach box (this box is otherwise not enabled).

Password protect Zip file(s): Select to force recipients to use a password to open the attached zip files. Note that users will be required to use this password open each one of the generated zip files.

Password: Enter the zip file password.

Login tab

Use Microsoft Outlook: Select to use Microsoft Outlook to send emails (and attachments). The host computer must be running Outlook, and PlanetPress Watch/Server must have access to Outlook. Emails generated by PlanetPress Watch/Server appear in the outbox before being sent by Outlook whenever it is set to send emails.

Use SMTP mail: Select to use Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) to send the emails (and attachments). To use SMTP you must enter information in the Name, Email Address and Outgoing Mail (SMTP) boxes below.

Name: Enter the sender's name that will be used in emails sent by PlanetPress Watch/Server for this task.

Organization: Enter the organization name that will be used in emails sent by PlanetPress Watch/Server for this task (this is optional).

Email address: Enter the sender's email address that will be used in emails sent by PlanetPress Watch/Server for this task.

Reply address: Enter the reply address that will be used in emails sent by PlanetPress Watch/Server for this task (this is optional).

Outgoing mail (SMTP): Enter the IP address of the mail server PlanetPress Watch/Server is to use to send emails via SMTP.

Server requires authentication: Select if the outgoing server mentioned above requires authentication. To

use authentication you must enter information in the Account name and Password boxes below.

Account name: Enter the name of the account that PlanetPress Watch/Server is to use to send emails via the mail server.

Password: Enter the password associated with the account name entered above.

Related topics:

- Printer Queue Output Task Properties (Page 137)
- Print Using a Windows Driver Output Task Properties (Page 138)
- FTP Output Task Properties (Page 139)
- Send to Folder Output Task Properties (Page 142)
- SOAP Client Task Properties (Page 143)
- Delete Output Task Properties (Page 145)

7.1.5 Send to Folder Output Task Properties

Send to Folder output tasks send the files they receive to a local folder. They perform the same function as Send to Folder *action* tasks, with the only difference being that in this case, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools will not wait for the task to be completed before going on to the next task in the configuration.

The following describes the properties specific to Send to Folder output tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

Send to Folder output task properties are as follows:

General tab

Folder: Enter the path of the folder to which the files are to be saved.

File name: Enter the name of the output files generated by this task. To prevent each new file from overwriting the previous one, you should use variable names. As with any variable property box, you can use any combination of text, variables and data selections.

Concatenate files: If this option is selected, when PlanetPress Watch/Server tries to save the job file under an existing name, it appends the content of the new job file to that of the existing file, instead of overwriting it.

When using a fully composed document in a PDF emulation mode, setting a *Send to Folder* output task provides the opportunity to logically merge PDF outputs by checking the *Concatenate files* box.

Note that concatenating PDF in a *PlanetPress Watch* environment will result in what is called a physical merge; this means the resulting output will **not be** a valid PDF file.

Separator string: This option is used to add a separator string between the content of each file when the Concatenate files option is selected.

Related topics:

7.1.6 SOAP Client Task Properties

SOAP Client tasks can be used as input, output and action tasks, although their basic function is to generate output. SOAP (Simple Object Access Protocol) is a light protocol that defines a standard XML format used to communicate among systems across different architectures, languages, and operating systems.

A SOAP request is an XML-based Remote Procedure Call (RPC) sent using the HTTP transport protocol. The payload of the SOAP packet is an XML document that specifies the call being made and the parameters being passed.

Web services, a SOAP class of applications, expose their services via the Internet in a manner that lets other applications access them, as well as use and combine them as required.

In order to access and successfully use Web services, client applications must know how to get them, what operations they support, what parameters they expect, as well as what they return. SOAP servers make this information available via WSDL (Web Service Description Language) files.

To configure a given SOAP Client task in the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program, you must first get its WSDL file (note that you cannot download the WSDL file over an HTTPS connection, so you should use an HTTP connection to get the file and then switch back to a secure connection). This lets you know which services the SOAP server provides, as well as each service's methods and namespaces.

If firewalls control communication between the SOAP client and the Web servers, they must be configured so as not to block client-server communication.

In the case of "string" type data, SOAP Client tasks normalize all line endings to a single line feed character.

The following describes the properties specific to SOAP Client tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

SOAP Client task properties are as follows:

General tab

WSDL address: Enter the URL address of the WSDL file, or choose a previously selected address from the drop-down list.

Get: Click to get the WSDL file from the SOAP server and populate the Service box below.

Service: Choose an available Web service from this drop-down list to populate the Method box below. You may also enter the service name directly if the WSDL file cannot be found.

Method: Choose an available method from this drop-down list. This populates the Namespace box below. You may also enter the method name directly.

Namespace: You may choose an available namespace to prevent ambiguity between identically named elements or attributes. You may also enter a namespace directly.

Resolve: Click to apply the options you chose above and to display the arguments of the chosen method in the Arguments box below.

As script: Click to apply the options you chose above and to display information on the chosen Web service in JavaScript format in a script viewer. You should use this option if the Web service is too complex to be interpreted correctly by the SOAP Client plugin.

Name: Displays the name of the arguments associated with the selected method. Note that you may also manually enter new arguments, change or delete existing ones, as well as change their order if needed.

Type: Displays the argument type.

Value: Lets you enter fixed or variable values. To exchange variable information between the Web service and PlanetPress Watch/Server, you must use job information variables %1 to %9 or variable %c (which contains the entire job file). Note that return values (arguments which are used to return information to the SOAP Client) are displayed in bold font.

Namespace: Displays the namespace of the arguments associated with the selected method.

Use returned raw SOAP packet as new data file: Check to use the complete SOAP packet (including the passed parameters) instead of the parameters only. This option overrides any return value set to %c in the Arguments box. You should use this option when the SOAP Client plugin is not able to fully support the syntax of the response.

advanced tab

Use proxy group

Select this option to use a proxy server and to activate this group.

Proxy address: Enter the IP address or name of the proxy server.

Proxy port: Enter the number of the port to use to contact the proxy server.

Use SOAP action group

Select this option to use a SOAP action and to activate this group.

SOAP action: Select the SOAP action to use.

Related topics:

- Printer Queue Output Task Properties (Page 137)
- Print Using a Windows Driver Output Task Properties (Page 138)
- FTP Output Task Properties (Page 139)
- Send Email Output Task Properties (Page 140)
- Send to Folder Output Task Properties (Page 142)
- Delete Output Task Properties (Page 145)

7.1.7 Delete Output Task Properties

Delete output tasks simply delete the job files they receive. They are often used after conditions to get rid of those files that did not meet the requirements of the condition.

The following describes the one property specific to Delete output tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

Delete output task property is as follows:

General tab

Move to recycle bin: Select to send the deleted files to the Windows recycle bin. When this option is not selected, deleted files cannot be restored.

Related topics:

- Printer Queue Output Task Properties (Page 137)
- Print Using a Windows Driver Output Task Properties (Page 138)
- FTP Output Task Properties (Page 139)
- Send Email Output Task Properties (Page 140)
- Send to Folder Output Task Properties (Page 142)
- SOAP Client Task Properties (Page 143)

8 PlanetPress Fax

Use PlanetPress Fax to send faxes via PlanetPress Watch/Server.

This section contains detailed information on:

- PlanetPress Fax Output Task Properties (Page 147)
- PlanetPress Fax User Options

8.1 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on the PlanetPress Fax output task properties and user options. It contains the following topics:

- PlanetPress Fax Output Task Properties (Page 147)
- PlanetPress Fax User Options

8.1.1 PlanetPress Fax Output Task Properties

PlanetPress Fax output tasks are used to make request to PlanetPress Fax, which creates faxes and sends them to a faxing program.

In addition to the job-specific PlanetPress Fax properties you configure in the task's properties dialog box, there are configurable options common to all PlanetPress Fax outputs processed by a given computer (see PlanetPress Fax User Options). Note that those options are specific to each PlanetPress Fax installation and that they are immediately applied.

The following describes the properties specific to PlanetPress Fax output tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as **Other** and **On error** properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

PlanetPress Fax output task properties are as follows:

General tab

Host: Select the IP address of the PlanetPress Fax host to which you want the request to be sent.

Refresh: Click to update the list of IP addresses displayed in the Host drop-down list box.

Documents: Select a specific PlanetPress Design document if you want all the jobs to be faxed with that document. To use a document chosen at runtime for each job, enter a dynamic document name using a combination of text, variables and data selections. To enable the dynamic document name box, click inside it. To disable it, press Enter. Note that in the later case, you must be certain that the documents that will be chosen at runtime will in fact be available locally or at the selected host. Note that None cannot be selected since a document is required to send a fax.

Add job information to the document: Select to add the available job info variables in the "header" of the generated output file.

Run mode group

Printer centric: Select to send the document along with the trigger and data to the component that generates fax documents.

Optimized PostScript Stream: Select to merge the selected document with the data received by this task before sending it to the component that generates fax documents. Some PlanetPress Design features, such as the Time and Date PlanetPress Talk functions, require that this option be selected.

Related topics:

- PlanetPress Fax User Options

8.1.2 PlanetPress Fax User Options

WRONG DOC-TO BE CHANGED

Can I change the way the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program looks and behaves?

The PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program lets you configure a variety of options, from how the application itself looks or behaves, to plugin specific options. To change your own user options, look for the **User options** command in the **Tools** menu.

9 PlanetPress Image

Use PlanetPress Image to create image files which can then be archived or sent via email.

This section contains detailed information on:

9.1 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on the PlanetPress Image output task properties and user options. It contains the following topics:

- PlanetPress Image Output Task Properties (Page 150)
- PlanetPress Image User Options (Page 155)

9.1.1 PlanetPress Image Output Task Properties

PlanetPress Image output tasks are used to make request to PlanetPress Image, which creates image files which it then archives or emails.

In addition to the job-specific PlanetPress Image properties you configure in the task's properties dialog box, there are configurable options common to all PlanetPress Image outputs processed by a given computer (see PlanetPress Image User Options). Note that those options are specific to each PlanetPress Image installation and that they are immediately applied.

The following describes the properties specific to PlanetPress Image output tasks. For information on those properties shared by various types of tasks, such as Other and On error properties, refer to Configurations, Processes and Tasks.

PlanetPress Image output task properties are as follows:

General tab

Host: Select the IP address of the PlanetPress Image host to which you want the request to be sent.
Refresh: Click to update the list of IP addresses displayed in the Host drop-down list box.
Documents: Select a specific PlanetPress Design document if you want all the jobs to be generated with that document. To use a document chosen at runtime for each job, enter a dynamic document name using a combination of text, variables and data selections. To enable the dynamic document name box, click inside it. To disable it, press Enter. Note that in the later case, you must be certain that the documents that will be chosen at runtime will in fact be available locally or at the selected host. Note that None cannot be selected since a document is required to generate a document.

Run mode group

Printer centric: Select to send the document along with the trigger and data to PlanetPress Image.
Optimized PostScript Stream: Select to merge the selected document with the data received by this task before sending it to PlanetPress Image. Note that some features, such as the Time and Date PlanetPress Talk functions, require that this option be selected.
Add job information to the document: Select to add the available job info variables in the "header" of the generated output file.
Output type: Select the image file type. If you select PDF, the DPI and Color Depth options (see below) are disabled and the options available in the PDF tab are enabled. JPEG is a lossy compression image format that creates small files, compressing continuous tone images (such as scanned photographs) well. TIFF is a higher quality format that is one of the standards for document exchange, useful for eventual printing or archiving. You have a choice of the following compressed TIFF formats: TIFF Group 3, TIFF Group 4, and TIFF Packed bits. You can also use the uncompressed TIFF format, which produces the largest files with the highest quality. TIFF is a versatile and platform-independent format. It is used in many digitizing projects as the format of choice for the digital masters. The TIFF Group 3 and Group 4 formats are efficient for document storage. The AutoStore, DocAccel and KYOcapture formats also generate TIFF files.
DPI: Enter the dots per inch (dpi) resolution of the output image. This property is enabled for all output types except PDF.
Color depth: Enter the color depth of the output image in bits per pixel (bpp). The color depth is measured in bits, because each pixel of the output image can be described with a varied number of bits. A higher bit number allows for more colors. It also increases the image file size. A 1-bit color depth produces monochrome images. 8-bits produce grayscale images (in PlanetPress Design you can have 8-bit color images, but these

are reduced to grayscale if you select 8-bit here), while 24-bits produce full color images. For JPEG output, you cannot select a monochrome (1 bpp) color depth. For TIFF G3 and TIFF G4, monochrome (1 bpp) is the only Color depth option you can select. This property is enabled for all output types except PDF.

Multi-page: Select to generate a single file containing multiple pages. When this option is not selected, PlanetPress Image creates a file for each page included in the output file. This property is enabled for all output types except PDF and JPEG.

Add page number: Select to put a page number on each page included in the output file. This option goes with the Multiple TIFF option and is only visible if either the AutoStore, DocAccel or KYOcapture format is selected.

Archive output: Select to archive generated files. If you select this option, you must enter a folder path in the Archive folder box and a name in the File name box.

Send Email: Select to send the generated file via email. You enter the emailing properties in the Login, Recipients, and Attachment(s) tabs. Note that the generated file will only be sent if you select the Attach output file(s) option in the Attachment(s) tab.

Archive folder: Enter the path of the folder to which output files generated by this task are to be archived. PDF index files (PDI and XML) are also put in this folder. This edit box is enabled when the Archive output option is selected.

File name: Enter the name of the output files generated by this task. To prevent each new file from overwriting the previous one, you should use variable names. As with any variable property box, you can use any combination of text, variables and data selections. When multiple files are generated for a single job (such as for multiple TIFFs), each file name includes a sequence number, such as in Invoice0, Invoice1, Invoice2. If you use file name masks that include dots, such as Statement.%y.@(1,1,1,1,25,KeepCase,Trim) or Job.%f, for example, you must add quotation marks at the beginning and end of the file name ("Statement.%y.%m.@(1,1,1,1,25,KeepCase,Trim)" or "Job.%f"). Otherwise, when the file is saved, anything appearing after the last dot is replaced by the file's extension characters (and the file name thus becomes Statement.2005.pdf instead of Statement.2005.255842.pdf, or Job.tif instead of Job.544872.tif). Failing to add the quotation marks may result in files being overwritten.

Index group

This group lets you specify which type of index must be created for each document generated by this task.

None: Select if you do not want this task to add an index file to the generated document.

PDI: Select if you want this task to add a PDI index file to the generated document.

XML and PDI: Select if you want this task to add both an XML and a PDI index file to the generated document.

PDF tab

If you chose PDF as the output type in the General tab, use this tab to choose the appropriate PDF options. Note that all the options available in this tab are only used with PDF files.

Job options: Select the PDF output option that best describes your needs. This loads all the standard settings for the selected usage scenario. These settings can be changed as required. Note that if you make changes and then select a different output option, your changes will be lost. PlanetPress Image supports numerous PDF standards: Standard, High Quality, Custom, and a variety of PDF/A and PDF/X formats.

General group

ASCII format: Select to create the PDF file using ASCII characters (instead of the usual 8-bit binary format). This option produces a file suitable for transmission over a 7-bit ASCII link. This option is useful if the PDFs need to be opened in a text editor, sent across networks, or sent via email using a program that does not support binary files. This option also generates smaller files.

Compress text and line art: Select to compress the text and line work in the file using the Flate compression filter. Flate is a compression method that works well on elements with large areas of single colors or repeating patterns, as well as on black-and-white elements that contain repeating patterns.

Auto-rotate pages: Select to automatically rotate pages based on the orientation of the text or DSC comments.

Optimize for fast web view: Select to minimize file size and facilitate page downloading.

Title: Enter a title for the document. If you leave this box empty, the document's name will be used as the document's title. Since this is a variable property box, you may use variables and data selections and let PlanetPress Watch/Server interpret this information at runtime.

Author: You may enter the name of the author of the document. Since this is a variable property box, you may use variables and data selections and let PlanetPress Watch/Server interpret this information at runtime.

Subject: You may enter the subject of the document. Since this is a variable property box, you may use variables and data selections and let PlanetPress Watch/Server interpret this information at runtime. Note that if you use a data selection in this box, you must be sure that the data that will be selected at runtime will not contain any parentheses, as this would cause the task to fail. If you suspect that the data may contain parentheses, you should use a Run script action task (see Run Script Action Task Property) with a Strip() function to strip them out.

Keywords: You may enter keywords for the document. Since this is a variable property box, you may use variables and data selections and let PlanetPress Watch/Server interpret this information at runtime.

Monochrome images group

Monochrome compression: Select the compression to use for the monochrome images. Flate compression is lossless, so no data is lost during compression. Flate Mono works well on images with large areas of solid shades or repeating patterns, such as screen shots and simple images created with paint or drawing programs. CCITT typically yields the best compression of monochrome images. It is the compression method developed for fax transmissions. Note that configurations that were created with an earlier version of PlanetPress Watch/Server and that included tasks set not to use any compression will by default be set to use the Flate compression method.

Monochrome resolution: Select the resolution to use for monochrome images.

Grayscale images group

Grayscale compression: Select the compression to use for the grayscale images. Flate is a lossless compression method, so no data is lost in the process. It works well on images with large areas of single shades or repeating patterns, such as screen shots and simple images created with paint or drawing programs. JPEG removes image data and may reduce image quality, but may be suitable for continuous-tone photographs containing more detail than can be reproduced onscreen or in print. Since JPEG eliminates data, it can achieve much smaller file sizes than Flate compression. Select Auto to let the application choose the best compression method automatically. Note that configurations that were created with an earlier version of PlanetPress Watch/Server and that included tasks set not to use any compression will by default be set to use the Flate compression method.

Grayscale downsampling: Select the downsampling option. Downsampling reduces image size by breaking images down into small areas in which multiple pixels are replaced by single pixels. The Grayscale resolution you enter in the following box is used to control the downsampling process. Select None to prevent grayscale downsampling. Select Average to average pixel shades in each sample area and to replace the entire area with a pixel of the average shade. Select Subsample to use a pixel in the center of the sample area and replace the entire area with that pixel value. This method is significantly faster, but results in images that are less smooth. Select Bicubic to use a weighted average to determine pixel shades. This method is the slowest but most precise and results in the smoothest tonal gradations.

Grayscale resolution: Select the resolution to use for grayscale images. Note that this setting has an impact on the grayscale downsampling process.

Color images group

Color compression: Select the compression to use for the color images. Flate is a lossless compression method, so no data is lost in the process. It works well on images with large areas of single shades or repeating patterns, such as screen shots and simple images created with paint or drawing programs. JPEG removes image data and may reduce image quality, but may be suitable for continuous-tone photographs containing more detail than can be reproduced onscreen or in print. Since JPEG eliminates data, it can achieve much smaller file sizes than Flate compression. Select Auto to let the application choose the best compression method automatically. Note that configurations that were created with an earlier version of PlanetPress Watch/Server and that included tasks set not to use any compression will by default be set to use the Flate compression method.

Color downsampling: Select the downsampling option. Downsampling reduces image size by breaking images down into small areas in which multiple pixels are replaced by single pixels. The Color resolution you enter in the following box is used to control the downsampling process. Select None to prevent grayscale downsampling. Select Average to average pixel color in each sample area and to replace the entire area with a pixel of the average color. Select Subsample to use a pixel in the center of the sample area and replace the entire area with that pixel value. This method is significantly faster, but results in images that are less smooth. Select Bicubic to use a weighted average to determine pixel shades. This method is the slowest but most precise and results in the smoothest tonal gradations.

Color resolution: Select the resolution to use for color images. Note that this setting has an impact on the

color downsampling process.

Security group

Permissions password: Enter a password in this box only if you want to prevent users who does not have this password from changing the security options of the generated PDF files.
PDF open password: Enter a password in this box only if you want to prevent users who does not have this password from opening the generated PDF files.
Allow printing: Select to let users print the generated PDF files.
Allow changing the document: Select to let users edit the generated PDF files.
Allow content copying: Select to let users copy content from the generated PDF files.
Allowform filling: Select to let users enter information in the form fields included in the generated PDF files.

Font group

Embed all: Select to embed the entire font of all fonts used in the variable content document within the generated PDFs. Using this option may result in large PDFs, especially if many fonts are used. Note that those fonts installed by default with the Adobe Acrobat and Adobe Reader are never embedded.
Subset: Select to embed only a subset of the Type 1 and TrueType fonts used in the document. A font subset is in fact composed of only those characters that are actually used in the document. This option can only be used if the Embed all fonts option is selected. Note that if more than 35% of the characters included in a font are used in the document, the entire font is embedded. This option often produces smaller PDF files and ensures proper PDF display.

Initial view group

Zoom factor: Select the magnification at which you want Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Reader (or other PDF viewer) to open the generated PDF. Choose the Fit in window option to display the entire page using the available screen space, or choose a percentage of the actual document size.
Show: Select the information you want Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Reader (or other PDF viewer) to display with the generated PDF. Select Page only to leave the tabs area to the left of the PDF pages empty. Select Bookmarks and page to display the contents of the Bookmarks tab (you use data selection objects to create bookmarks in PlanetPress) alongside the PDF pages. Select Page tab and Page to display the content of the Pages tab (thumbnails of each PDF pages) alongside the PDF pages. Select Full screen to hide all screen contents except the PDF page, and expand the PDF page to the maximum size it can occupy onscreen.

Login tab

If you chose Send Email in the General tab, use this tab to choose the appropriate email settings.
Use Microsoft Outlook: Select to use Microsoft Outlook on the host computer running PlanetPress Image to send emails (and attachments). The host computer must be running Outlook, and PlanetPress Image must have access to Outlook. Emails generated by PlanetPress Image appear in the outbox before being sent by Outlook whenever it is set to send emails.
Use SMTP email: Select to use Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) to send the emails (and attachments). To use SMTP you must enter information in the Name, Email Address and Outgoing Mail (SMTP) boxes below.
Name: Enter the sender's name that will be used in emails sent by PlanetPress Image for this task.
Organization: Enter the organization name that will be used in emails sent by PlanetPress Image for this task (this is optional).
Email address: Enter the sender's email address that will be used in emails sent by PlanetPress Image for this task.
Reply address: Enter the reply address that will be used in emails sent by PlanetPress Image for this task (this is optional).
Outgoing mail (SMTP): Enter the IP address of the mail server PlanetPress Image is to use to send emails via SMTP.
Server requires authentication: Select if the outgoing server mentioned above requires authentication. To use authentication you must enter information in the Account name and Password boxes below.
Account name: Enter the name of the account that PlanetPress Image is to use to send emails via the mail server.
Password: Enter the password associated with the account name entered above.

Recipients tab

Once more, if you chose Send Email in the General tab, use this tab to choose the appropriate email settings.
To: Enter the email address(es) of the recipient(s). Remember this is a variable property box and you can therefore use various schemes to use email addresses that change with each job at runtime.
Use document's Email address: Select to send emails generated by PlanetPress Image to email addresses identified by the PlanetPress Design document selected in the General tab. In PlanetPress Design, you can tag a data selection as being an email address. When data is merged to the PlanetPress Design document, this information becomes available to PlanetPress Image which can use it directly to send emails. If this option is selected and if addresses were entered in the To box, emails will be sent both to the document's email address and to the other addresses as well (which may turn out to be the same, if data selections were used).
Cc: Specify addresses to which copies of the generated emails are to be sent.
Bcc: Specify discreet addresses (other recipients will not be able to see these addresses) to which copies of the generated emails are to be sent.
Subject: Enter the subject of the emails generated by PlanetPress Image for this task. Note that if you use a data selection in this box, you must be sure that the data that will be selected at runtime will not contain any parentheses, as this would cause the task to fail. If you suspect that the data may contain parentheses, you should use a Run script action task (see Run Script Action Task Property) with a Strip() function to strip them out.
Use document's Email subject: Select to use the email subject identified by the PlanetPress Design document selected in the General tab. This option works the same way as the Use document's email address(es) option above. If this option is selected and a subject was entered in the Subject box, both subjects will appear as the email's subject.
Message: Enter the content of the email message. Since this is a variable property box, the text may be personalized using variables and data selections.
Use document's Email message text: Select to use the email message identified by the PlanetPress Design document selected in the General tab. This option works the same way as the Use document's email address(es) option above. If this option is selected and a message was entered in the Message box, both messages will appear in the body of the email.

Attachments tab

Finally, if you chose Send Email in the General tab, use this tab to add the generated files (plus any other file that you may choose to attach) to the emails sent by PlanetPress Image.
Attach output file: Select to attach the generated image files to the email sent by PlanetPress Image. Note that some image file formats may generate multiple files (and thus multiple attachments) for a single job. This option will attach all files resulting from a particular job. If this option is not selected, the recipients will not receive any of the generated image files.
File: Select additional files to include as attachments. You may enter the file name directly and use text, variables and data selections. You may also use the Browse button to navigate and select the file. To add the file to list displayed in the Attach box, you must the click the downward pointing arrow button.
Attach: Lists the files that will be attached to the messages sent from PlanetPress Image for this task. Selecting the Attach output file(s) option adds these files at the top of the list. Any other file that may have been added using the File box (above) is also listed here.
Zip mode: Select how you want the files checked in the Attach box to be zipped. Select Zip individually to have PlanetPress Image create a zip file for each file. Select Archive and Zip if you prefer to have one zip file that contains all the attached files.
Zip file name: Enter the name of the one zip file that will be created if the Archive and Zip option was selected in the Attach box (this box is otherwise not enabled).
Password protect Zip file(s): Select to force recipients to use a password to open the attached zip files. Note that users will be required to use this password open each one of the generated zip files.
Password: Enter the zip file password.

Related topics:

- PlanetPress Image User Options (Page 155)

Overview of the PDF/A and PDF/X Standards

Introduction to PDF/A and PDF/X Standards

PDF/A and PDF/X are standards that are specialized versions of the PDF document format for specific usage, specifically long-term archival and graphic art printing.

The PDF/X standard ensures that graphic art files will be reproduced on press exactly as the files' creator intended them to be, regardless of the platforms, operating systems, color spaces, font systems, file formats and medias.

The PDF/A standard provides "a mechanism for representing electronic documents in a manner that preserves their visual appearance over time, regardless of the tools and systems used for creating, storing or rending the files" (From ISO 19005-1).

Both these standards will become available in PlanetPress Suite Version 7.

Basic Features

A new option in the *PlanetPress Image Output* plugin and the *Digital Imaging* Action plugin, under the *PDF* tab, will allow users create their PlanetPress Image PDF using either PDF/X or PDF/A standards.

This option will only be available for PDF file outputs.

The following standards will be supported:

- PDF/A-1b:2005 (CMYK)
- PDF/A-1b:2005 (RGB)
- PDF/X-1a:2001
- PDF/X-1a:2003
- PDF/X-3:2002
- PDF/X-3:2003

Other notes:

- Digital Signature is not supported with PDF/X.
- Encryption is not supported with PDF/A and PDF/X.
- Because of mandatory font embedding with these standards, all fonts must be available locally; otherwise creation of either PDF/X or PDF/A will fail.

9.1.2 PlanetPress Image User Options

PlanetPress Image user options control certain functions of the PlanetPress Image service, which in turn has a direct impact on all PlanetPress Image output tasks performed on a given computer. These include error and logging options, PlanetPress Search database options, as well as networking and email options.

Bear in mind that PlanetPress Image output tasks included in a given PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration can be performed by a PlanetPress Image installation running on a different computer, typically one that runs only PlanetPress Image. When you change the user options on a given computer, only that computer is affected. So you should consider changing the PlanetPress Image user options on the computer that actually performs the PlanetPress Image output tasks.

For information on the properties set in individual PlanetPress Image output tasks, refer to PlanetPress Image Output Task Properties (Page 150).

The changes you make to the PlanetPress Image user options are stored in the PlanetPress Image configuration file (**ppimage.cfg**). They will be applied when PlanetPress Image is started.

The available PlanetPress Image user options are as follows:

PlanetPress Image 1 or logging tab

Administrator's address(es): Enter one or more system administrator email addresses to which error and other messages related to the creation of PDFs/images by PlanetPress Image are sent. Separate multiple email addresses with semi-colons (;).

Send to the administrator group

Daily log: Select to send an email to the administrator every day at midnight (according to the local system clock) reporting the daily activity of PlanetPress Image. The log is sent to all addresses you enter in the Administrator's address(es) text box.
Error Log: Select to send an email that includes the current error log to the administrator when an error occurs. The error log is sent to all addresses you enter in the Administrator's address(es) text box.
Error file: When enabled, sends an e-mail with an attachment of the offending file when an error occurs in the PlanetPress Image output task. Additionally, a backup of the job is created in the Error folder, which is located in the PlanetPress Suite installation folder.
Name or address not resolved: Select to send an email to the administrator when a name or address in the document selected to be used in PlanetPress Image cannot be resolved.
Delete log after: Enter the number of days to wait before deleting the log of the generated PlanetPress Image output. Each log file covers a single 24-hour period and is kept in the Log folder, which is located in the PlanetPress Suite installation folder. This log may be on the local computer running PlanetPress Watch/Server or on another computer on your network.
Activation: Click to enter activation codes for the PlanetPress Image service installed on the same computer as PlanetPress Watch/Server. If you have already activated the PlanetPress Image service from its Control Panel applet, this is reflected when you open the activation dialog box by clicking this button.
Check for updates: Click to access the Objectif Lune website to search for updates to PlanetPress Image. You are guided through the updating process with the PlanetPress Suite Update Service wizard.
About: Click to display an About dialog box for PlanetPress Image. This dialog box contains information such as the version number, whether the software is activated or the number of days remaining in the trial.
Select Language: Click to select a different interface language for the PlanetPress Image Configuration applet. Note that this button is not displayed if you edit the PlanetPress Image options directly (not via PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program).

PlanetPress Image 2 or database tab

Add PDF to PlanetPress Search database group
Select to populate a PlanetPress Search database using the documents created by PlanetPress Image and to activate the ralated options. Refer to the PlanetPress Search User Guide for more information on this PlanetPress Suite software.
Database type: Select the type of the database in which you want to create a table (Access, or SQL Server).
Connection time-out: Enter the time, in seconds, that the connection to the database is maintained while no action is taking place before the connection is severed.
Database directory: Enter the path of the directory in which the Access database is located, or use the Browse button to navigate to, and select, the directory. This option is available only when you select Access database in the Database type box.
Data source name: Enter the name of the computer on which the database runs. This option is available only when you select SQL Server database or Oracle database in the Database type box.
Use default database: Select to use the default database associated with your user profile on that SQL Server or Oracle database. Clear to enter the name of the database in the box that appears.
Use Windows NT Integrated security: Select to use your Windows user name and password to log onto the SQL database.
User ID: Enter the user id required to access the database to which you are adding new PDI files from the generated PDF files. If you are using an SQL database, enter the login name you chose when you configured the SQL database (refer to the "Using PlanetPress Search with an SQL Server Database" section of the PlanetPress Search User Guide).
Password: Enter the password required to access the database.
Test Connection: Click to verify that PlanetPress Image can connect to the specified database.
Enforce global table creation: Select this option, as it ensures that all database users are granted access to the database. This option is available only when you select SQL database in the Database type box.

PlanetPress Image 3 or network tab

NetWare login group
Select to enable the login-specific user options PlanetPress Image requires to access NetWare resources and to activate the related options. Note that if you select this option, you will be required to enter a username, password, and NDS tree.
Username: Enter your NetWare username. This is the user the PlanetPress Image service uses to log in to the NetWare network at runtime. The service accesses resources as configured for this user.
Password: Enter the NetWare password corresponding to the user you entered in the Username text box.
Tree: Enter the Netware Directory Services (NDS) tree where the user resides. The user is the one you entered in the Username text box. If you enter a value in the Server box, you can leave this box empty.
Context: Enter the context on the NDS tree where the user you enter in the Username text box resides. You can leave this box empty if there is a single root context on your NDS tree, if you can perform a context-free login, or if you enter a server name in the Server box. Note that PlanetPress Watch and PlanetPress Image use the same security context when connected to a NetWare server and that they each use one connection.
Server: Enter the server on which the NDS tree resides. You do not have to specify a server if there is only a single configured server on your network. If you specify a server, you can leave either or both the Tree and Context boxes empty.
Expand folder paths in UNC format: Select to expand all paths used in PlanetPress Image to UNC. This converts map drives such as f:\, to absolute paths referenced from a server in the format \\server-name\shared-resource-pathname. This is useful, for example, if a user logging in and out of NetWare references local resources NetWare has not mapped. It is necessary when PlanetPress Watch/Server services run on computers where no user is logged on. No mapped drives are recognized and paths must be in UNC format to work. It can also be useful when sharing configurations between users. When you select this option, the next time you configure a task, after editing properties and clicking OK in its properties dialog box, entered paths are expanded to UNC format.

PlanetPress Image 4 or login tab

Use Microsoft Outlook: Select to use Microsoft Outlook on the host computer running PlanetPress Image to send the error messages to the administrators. The host computer must be running Outlook, and PlanetPress Watch/Server must have access to Outlook. Outgoing emails appear in the outbox of Outlook, and is sent whenever Outlook is set to send email.
Use SMTP mail group
Select to activate this group's options and to use Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) to send the error messages to the administrators. Note that if you select this option, you will be required to enter information in the Name, Email address and Outgoing mail (SMTP) boxes.
Name: Enter the name of the user sending the error messages to the administrators.
Organization: Enter the name of the organization of the user sending the error messages to the administrators.
Email address: Enter the email address of the user sending the error messages to the administrators.
Reply address: Enter the reply address that recipients use to reply to the error messages.
Outgoing mail (SMTP): Enter the IP address of the server that PlanetPress Watch/Server uses to send the emails via SMTP.
Server requires authentication: Select if the outgoing server used to send the emails via SMTP requires authentication. Note that if you select this option, you will be required to enter information in the Account name and Password boxes below.
Account name: Enter the account name of the user on the server to be able to send emails via SMTP. You must select Server requires authentication to enable this field.
Password: Enter the password corresponding to the Account name of the user on the server to be able to send email via SMTP. You must select Server requires authentication to enable this field.

Related topics:

- PlanetPress Image Output Task Properties (Page 150)

🔳 10 Action Tasks

Use action tasks in PlanetPress Watch/Server to perform a wide variety of operations. PlanetPress Watch/Server includes more action tasks then input and output tasks combined. Action tasks can even be used to input data and to output data.

Action tasks can perform operations such as split a large data file into smaller—typically single client or single account—files. They can be used to add digital signatures to PDF files, they can be used to search and replace strings within data files, they can even be used to run processes performed by external applications. This section covers all the action tasks available in PlanetPress Watch/Server.

This section contains detailed information on:

10.1 Detailed Directions

- This section contains detailed information on the properties of the available action tasks. It contains the following topics:

10.1.1 Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties

Advanced Search and Replace action tasks are used to locate and replace strings of data within the job file and to replace them with other strings of data. Contrary to Search and Replace action tasks, they allow the use of regular expressions.

Using regular expressions, it is possible to search for patterns rather than specific strings. For instance, a pattern can be specified to find all valid email addresses or phone numbers within the data stream.

Advanced Search and Replace action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Search mode group

Select your chosen search mode within this group.

Search line by line: Select if you want each line in the data stream to be searched separately. When this option is selected, PlanetPress Watch/Server considers each line as an individual data stream (lines are separated by Line Feed characters). It minimizes memory requirements but may also limit hits, since lines are

considered separately. Note that it is not possible to use search expressions that specify multiple data lines when this option is selected.

Search whole file: Select if you want the entire data stream to be searched as if it were a single string of text. When this option is selected, PlanetPress Watch/Server loads the entire file in memory. It offers more flexibility, since search expressions may span across multiple lines and may result in more successful hits. Note that since this option uses more memory, it may affect performance.

String to search: Enter your search string or regular expression in this variable property box. To enter multiple strings or expressions, press Enter after each one (note that only one string can be entered in the Replace with box).

Treat as regular expression: Select to specify that the string or strings entered above are to be interpreted as regular expressions rather than ordinary text strings. This option disables all position options (see the Position options group below), since the position information can be included in the regular expression statement, as well as the Whole words only option.

Search options group

Case sensitive: Select to force the plugin to match the character casing of the search string above with the characters found in the file. If this option is selected, "DAY" and "Day" will not be considered as matching the search string "day".

Whole word only: Select force the plugin to search only for strings that match the search string from beginning to end (cannot be used with regular expressions). If this option is selected, "DAY" and "DAYS" will not be considered as matching strings.

Position options group

Specify the location where the string must be found using this group. Note that this whole group is disabled when the Treat as regular expression option is selected.

Anywhere on the line: Select to indicate that the search string can be anywhere on the line.

At the beginning of a line: Select to indicate that the search string must be the first string on the line.

At the end of a line: Select to indicate that the search string must be the last string on the line.

At column: Select to indicate that the search string must be in a specific column. Specify the column number (the value must be greater then 0) in the box below. Note
that this is a variable property box.

Between specific words: Select to indicate that the search string must be between specific words. Specify these words in the Words before and Words after boxes below. This option can be useful to locate information found between tags, such as HTML or XML tags. Note that these are variable property boxes.

Occurrence related: Select to indicate that the search string must be found a specific number of times before a string replacement is performed. If the Search line by line option is selected in the Search mode group, the search counter is reset for every line. If the Search whole file option is selected in the Search mode group, the search counter is not reset before the end of the file. Select one of the occurrence options (described below) in the list box below and enter a value in the variable property box besides it.

- At occurrence: The replacement will take place only when the specified number of occurrences has been reached. Specifying 2 occurrences, for instance, means that only the second occurrence will be replaced.
- At every specified occurrence: The replacement will take place every time the specified number of occurrences is reached. Specifying 2 occurrences, for instance, means that the second, the fourth and the sixth (and so on) occurrence will be replaced.
- All after occurrence: All occurrences of the search string will be replaced once the specified number of occurrences has been reached. Specifying 2 occurrences, for instance, means that all occurrences after the second one will be replaced.

- All before occurrence: All occurrences of the search string will be replaced until the specified number of occurrences has been reached. Specifying 5 occurrences, for instance, means that the four first occurrences will be replaced.

Replace with: Enter the string that must be used as the replacement sting when a match is found. This is also a variable property box.

Related topics:a

- [Search and Replace Action Task Properties](#)

10.1.2 Database Action Task Properties

PlanetPress Database action tasks retrieve data from various databases to use as input data. The data received by the task may be kept as is or converted to the CSV, Fixed Length Columns or XML format.

PlanetPress Database action tasks are not input tasks as such, since they cannot be used as the initial input of a process. Bear in mind that a task that draws in secondary input data replaces any previous data.

PlanetPress Database action tasks require version 2.5 or higher of the Microsoft Data Access Components (MDAC), including JET 4.0.

When adding a PlanetPress Database action task, you have two options:

- You can use *static properties* (properties that will remain the same regardless of the data processed at runtime). This option lets you use an Open DataBase Connectivity (ODCB) compliant data source. You can also edit the SQL statement that assembles the database table. Note that you can import a database connection configuration that you previously exported from PlanetPress Design (when you created a document) or from PlanetPress Watch/Server (when you set up a sample data file for a process).
- You can use *dynamic properties* (properties that include variables or data available at runtime). This option lets you create a dynamic database connection string as well as an SQL statement that changes based on the data processed by PlanetPress Watch/Server. Note that this option will not let you test the query performed by this task before it is performed with actual data.

PlanetPress Database action task properties are as follows:

Database Connection tab

Database group

Location: Enter either the path and name of the database or a database connection string in this box. You may click to navigate to the database and paste the database path and name automatically to this box. You may also click create an ODBC connection string to the data source and paste the string automatically to this box. If a login name and password are required to connect to the database, a dialog box is displayed and the information you enter is saved in the configuration of the PlanetPress Database action task.

Table/Query: Select the table or query containing the information you need as your input data.

Range group

All: Select this option use all the records included in the database.

Records: Select this option use only some of the records in the database. Indicate the range by entering the number of the first record followed by a dash and the number of the last record. To use records 50 to 75, for example, enter 50-75. Note that this option is intended mostly for testing purposes, since in real life scenarios, you typically want to use all the records stored in a database.

Emulation group

Use options from this group to customize the data file generated by the PlanetPress Database action task.

Output file emulation: Select the emulation corresponding to the type of output file you want the PlanetPress Database action task to generate.

CR-LF replacement: If you want CR-LF (Carriage Return-Line Feed) characters within the data file to be replaced by another character, use this box to indicate which character to use. You may select the replacement character from the list or type your own.

Emulation options group

Options from this group change based on the selected output file emulation.

PlanetPress Database Emulation

If you selected PlanetPress Database in the Output file emulation box, the following options are available:

Create data pages as follows: Select the option that will be used to generate the data pages. Each data page created using the table or query selected above (Table/Query box) can contain a single record, a fixed number of records, or a variable number of records. To choose the last option, select one of the When [field name] changes listed in this box.

Sort on conditional field: Select this option if you want the table to be sorted using the field selected in the Create data pages as follows box before the data page creation process is started.

Maximum number of records per page: For data pages that contain multiple records (a fixed or variable number of records), enter a maximum number of records per page in this box. Note that this value cannot exceed 4,000.

CSV Emulation

If you selected CSV in the Output file emulation box, the following options are available:

Sort on field: If you want the table to be sorted before the data page creation process is started, select the sort field from this box.

Text delimiter: Select the text delimiter to be used in the generated file.

Field separator: Select the field separator to be used in the generated file.

Add a header record with field names: Select this option if you want the generated file to have a header record (a record that includes the field names only).

Fixed Length Columns Emulation

If you selected Fixed length columns in the Output file emulation box, the following options are available.

Sort on field: If you want the table to be sorted before the data page creation process is started, select the sort field from this box.

Default width: This box is used to set the default width for all fields. It is set to 60 by default, but can be set to any value between 1 and 65535. This value is applied to all the fields in the generated file. To set different widths for each field, use the Configure Width button. Doing this disables the Default width box.

Configure Width: Click to set the width of each field in the generated file. The displayed Configure Width dialog box lists all the fields in the file that will be generated and indicates their widths. To change the indicated widths, simply click the values displayed in the Width column and enter new values. Click OK when you are done to close the dialog box. You will then no longer be able to use the Default width box.

XML Emulation

If you selected XML in the Output file emulation box, the following options are available:

Create data pages as follows: Select the option used to generate the data pages. Each data page created using the table or query selected above (Table/Query box) can contain a single record, a fixed number of records, or a variable number of records. To choose the last option, select one of the When [field name] changes listed in this box.

Sort on conditional field: Select this option if you want the table to be sorted using the field selected in the Create data pages as follows box before the data page creation process is started.

Data encoding: Select the encoding used in the generated XML file. By default, this option is set to the default encoding of the computer used to create or edit the configuration. You may choose any encoding listed in the drop-down list or enter your own.

Maximum records per page: Select this option if you want to limit the number of records per page. This option is only available if you indicated that you wanted each data page to contain several records in the Create data pages as follows box.

Data encoding: Select the encoding to be used in the generated XML file. By default, this option is set to the default encoding of the computer used to create or edit the configuration. You may choose any encoding listed in the drop-down list or enter your own.

Alternate syntax: Select this option if your query uses an alternate syntax.

Edit SQL: Click to create and test an advanced SQL query.

Import Config: If you previously created and exported a PlanetPress Database Connection configuration, click this button to import it. This saves you the trouble of configuring the connection every time.

Include password in config: Select to save an encrypted version of the database password (if any) within the exported configuration.

Export Config: Click to export the currently displayed properties of the PlanetPress Watch/Server action task. The exported configuration can then be reused on other PlanetPress Watch/Server workstations.

Dynamic SQL tab

Use dynamic values at runtime group

Use dynamic values at runtime: Select to use a dynamic database connection string and/or SQL statement at runtime. Check this box to enable the options included in this group (this disables the corresponding options in the General tab).

Parse normally: Select to interpret any backslashes included in the database connection string as backslashes. If this option is not selected, any backslash that is not doubled will be disregarded.

Database connection string: Enter a variable connection string in this box. To do this you may begin by clicking to create an ODBC connection string to the data source and paste the string automatically to this box. Note that if a login name and password are required to connect to the database, a dialog box is displayed and the information you enter is saved in the configuration of the PlanetPress Database action task. Another option, if a database connection string (not a database path and name) was already entered in the Database Connection tab, is ti simply copy and paste it to this box. Bear in mind that if the Parse normally option is not selected, any backslashes included in the connection string that is not doubled will be disregarded. Once your connection string is displayed in this box, you can edit it by adding variables or data selections.

SQL statement: Enter your SQL statement. Remember that you may use variables and data selections in your statement.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)

10.1.3 PrintForm Action Task Properties

PrintForm action tasks use the PrintForm software from Firstlogic to perform address related processing or verification on the data files they receive. PrintForm can perform verification and correction of mail addresses as well as sort addresses by zip code and/or mail route. It performs these verifications and corrections to ensure that addresses conform to United Stated Postal Service (USPS) standards.

A valid PrintForm job file is required to use PrintForm action tasks. A sufficient degree of familiarity with PrintForm job file set up and configuration is also essential. For information on any of these subjects, refer to PrintForm documentation.

PrintForm action task properties are as follows:

General tab

PrintForm jobfile group

Name of jobfile to be used within PrintForm: Select a jobfile from the drop-down list. Click to navigate to one (jobfiles have a .pf extension) if none are listed. The PrintForm jobfile describes the job and includes the location of the input data file (this information is automatically added by PlanetPress Watch).

Configure PrintForm job: Click to launch PrintForm and edit the PrintForm jobfile. Be sure to save your modifications in PrintForm before you exiting and coming back to PlanetPress Watch/Server.

Options to use while executing PrintForm jobfile group

Answer all warnings with "continue": Select to ignore all PrintForm warnings.

No stop on warning or error: Select to prevent processing from being stopped when PrintForm error and warning messages are issued. When this option is selected, batch jobs will always run to completion even when if some of its jobs fail.

Verification only: Select to prompt PrintForm to verify the data and not actually process it. This option is typically used for testing purposes.

Add time-of-day to processing messages: Select to add the date and time to any messages PrintForm issues. This option is only valid if the No stop on warning or error option is also selected. It is typically used along with the Record messages in a log file option below.

Record messages in a log file: Select to save all PrintForm messages to a log file. Use the text box below to enter the name and path of the log file. This option is only valid if the No stop on warning or error option is also selected.

Data Stream group

Use original data stream: Select to save the file generated by this task to a file and to pass the original job file received by this task to the following task.

Use generated file as new data stream: Select pass the file generated by this task to the following task.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

10.1.4 PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties

Once you have imported PrintShop Mail documents (see Import Documents (Page 244)) to your PlanetPress Watch/Server workstation, you can use PrintShop Mail action tasks to output the job file with a selected PrintShop Mail document. PrintShop Mail action tasks let you print as well as generate PostScript or PDF files.

PrintShop Mail action task properties are as follows:

PSMail tab

File name: Select a specific PrintShop Mail document if you want all the jobs to be printed with that document. To use a document chosen at runtime for each job, enter a dynamic document name using a combination of text, variables and data selections. To enable the dynamic document name box, click inside it. To disable it, press Enter. Note that in the later case, you must be certain that the documents that will be chosen at runtime will in fact be available locally or at all the selected printer.

Output type group

Output type: Select the type of output you want the task to generate. • Select PDF to generate a PDF file. • Select Windows PostScript driver to print to a PostScript printer available via Windows.

- Select Preflight to generate a pre-flight document.
- Select Produce PostScript to generate a standard PostScript file that can then be sent to any PostScript printer.
- Select JPG to generate a JPG image file.

Distilling options file: Enter the name and path of a distilling options file or use the Browse button to navigate to that file. Note that this box is only available when PDF is selected in the Output type box.

Windows printer: Select the print driver of the printer to which you want the print job to be sent. Note that this box is only available when Windows PostScript driver is selected in the Output type box.

Toggle: Note that this box is only available when Preflight is selected in the Output type box.

Layout: Note that this box is only available when JPG is selected in the Output type box.

Page range group

All pages: Select if you want to print all the data pages included in the job file.

Use page range: Select if you want to print only some of the data pages included in the job file. Use the From and To boxes to indicate the page range.

From: Enter the number of the first data page you want to print.

To: Enter the number of the last data page you want to print.

10.1.5 Rename Action Task Property

Rename action tasks are used to rename the job files they receive. Note that you can see how each file is renamed via the Object Inspector when stepping through a process in Debug mode.

Rename action task property is as follows:

General tab

New file name: Enter the job file's new name. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements, data selections, or any combination of these.

Related topics:

Rename action tasks are used to rename the job files they receive. Note that you can see how each file is renamed via the Object Inspector when stepping through a process in Debug mode.

Rename action task property is as follows:

General tab

New file name: Enter the job file's new name. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements, data selections, or any combination of these.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- Load External File Action Task Properties (Page 179)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

10.1.6 Run Script Action Task Properties

Run Script action tasks are used to run scripts that typically perform some kind of processing on the job file received by the task. Scripts are often simpler to write than programs added with the External Program action (see External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)). However, they are usually slower to execute.

The following scripting languages can be used if they are available are enabled on your system: VBscript, JavaScript, Perl, Python.

Bear in mind that the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools include an editor that you can use to import, edit and export scripts (see Use the Editor (Page 222) and Import and Export Scripts (Page 222)).

The Run Script action task can be used as both an action or a condition. When dragging and dropping a Run Script action task on a given process, you select whether to use this task as an action or a condition from a contextual menu. When creating a script condition, the condition result is returned by the *script.returnvalue* method. If the return value is zero (the default return value), the condition is **false**. Otherwise, it is **true**.

Run Script action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Script running from: Select the location of the script to execute. If you select **Embedded script**, use the **Script** field to enter your script. If you choose **Script file**, two new options are displayed.

Script filename and path: Select an external script file with the **Browse** button.

Language: Specify the language of the external script.

Script: Enter your script. The default scripting language when a new task is added is VBScript. Scripts use syntax highlighting and formatting based on the currently selected language. To select a different scripting language, use the Script Editor. Right-clicking allows to fetch Local, Global and System variables, as well as Data selections.

Open Editor: Click to open the Script Editor and get access to all its script editing functions. For usage information, refer to Use the Editor (Page 222).

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

10.1.7 Search and Replace Action Task Properties

Search and Replace action tasks are used to locate and replace strings of data within the job file and to replace them with other strings of data. Note that this action task cannot be used with binary files.

Search and Replace action task properties are as follows:

Find: Enter the string of data for which to search. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements, data selections, or any combination of these.

Replace with: Enter the string of data to use as a replacement. Since this is also a variable property box, the same as above applies.

10.1.8 Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties

Send Images to Printer action tasks are used to warn printers that the files that will be sent to them are to be stored rather than printed. They are comparable to Download to Printer action tasks (see Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)), but they include image specific options. Furthermore, they can be used to send images not only to printers, but also to the virtual drive of other computers running PlanetPress Suite applications.

Note that images sent to a printer are stored in the root folder of the printer's hard disk, while images sent to the virtual drive of another computer are stored in a subfolder of the PlanetPress Watch/Server folder.

Send Images to Printer action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Scan orientation: Select Side to side for images that will be printed in their original orientation on a portrait oriented page, or in a rotated orientation on a landscape page. Select Top to bottom for images that will be printed in a rotated orientation on a portrait oriented page, or in a rotated orientation on a portrait oriented page. Note that images that are meant to be printed in various ways can be stored twice on the printer as two identical copies of the same file that bear different names (Image_Original.tif and Image_Rotated.tif, for example). The first copy can be processed using a Send Images to Printer action task with the scan orientation set to Side to side, the second one with a different Send Images to Printer action task with the scan orientation set to Top to bottom, each one typically being included on two different branches of the same process.

Color conversion: Select As is to keep the color information included in the images. Select Grayscale to convert color images to grayscale.

Naming convention: Select 'File name, original' to store the file under its original file name. Select 'File name, no extension' to store the file without its original file name extension. Note that all characters are converted to uppercase and that extended characters (diacreased characters, such as é, for example) are not recommended in image file names.

Image quality: Select the same image quality chosen in the PlanetPress Design documents that reference the image files you are sending. In PlanetPress Design, this setting is included in the document's resource options.

Image compression level: Select the level at which you want images to be compressed. Values can range from 1 (compress up to 1% of the image's original size) to 100 (do not compress). For example if you set this box to 75, the Image Downloader compresses all images by 75% when it converts those image to PostScript. The default compression level is 70%.

Resolutions group

Color (DPI): Set the dot per inch (DPI) resolution for color images.

Grayscale (DPI): Set the dot per inch (DPI) resolution for grayscale images.

Monochrome (DPI): Set the dot per inch (DPI) resolution for monochrome images.

Send to Virtual Drive of: Select the computers and/or printers to which the images are to be sent.

Refresh: Click to prompt PlanetPress Watch/Server to look again for available printers and computers.

Hard disk name and path: You may enter the name and path of the hard disk to which you want to send the images. Needless to say that this option is used if the device to which you are sending the images has multiple hard drives.

Print confirmation page: Select to print a confirmation page on each one of the selected printers after an image has been successfully received.

Related topics:

10.1.9 Send to Folder Action Task Properties

Send to Folder action tasks send the files they receive to a local folder. They perform the same function as Send to Folder *output* tasks, with the only difference being that in this case PlanetPress Watch/Server will wait for the task to be completed before going on to the next task in the configuration.

Send to Folder action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Folder: Enter the path of the folder to which the files are to be saved.

File name: Enter the name of the output files generated by this task. To prevent each new file from overwriting the previous one, you should use variable names. As with any variable property box, you can use any combination of text, variables and data selections.

Concatenate files: If this option is selected, when PlanetPress Watch/Server tries to save a file under a given name, if a file under that same name already exists, instead of overwriting it, PlanetPress Watch/Server will append the content of the new file to that of the existing file. This appending process will go on until the file is removed from the folder.

Separator string: This option is used to add a separator string between the content of each file when the Concatenate files option is selected.

Related topics:

10.1.10 Set Variables Action Task Properties

Add Set Job Infos and Variable action tasks to set job info elements as well as custom variables. Note that you can set multiple job infos and variables with a single task.

Set Job Infos and Variables action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Var/Info#: Select the job information element or custom variable that you want to define. To add a new line and select another job info or variable, click . To remove a line on which a job info or variable was set, select that line and click .

Value: Enter the value that you want to associate with the selected job information element or custom variable. As this is a variable property box, you may use variables and data selections. If you select a custom variable and enter the variable "%f" (without the quotes) in the Value box, for instance, when the process is performed and the task executed, the variable will be set to contain the current job's file name.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

10.1.11 Standard Filter Action Task Properties

Standard Filter action tasks can be used to remove HP Escape characters from data files, as well as to eliminate spacing problems caused by LF-CR end-of-line sequences.

Standard Filter action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Process job using ASCII emulation: Select to use the ASCII emulation to process the job file. This reverses LF-CR end-of-line sequences that may result in unwanted double-spacing.

Remove and convert HP escape characters: Select to filter HP escape character sequences from the job file.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

10.1.12 Translator Action Task Properties

PlanetPress Watch/Server Translator action tasks can convert your data from its current encoding to a number of different encodings. Note that the same data may be converted back and forth as required.

Translator action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Source encoding: Select the current data encoding. Note that the source encoding is *not selected automatically* and you must therefore select the proper encoding from this list in order for the conversion process to be performed successfully.

Target encoding: Select the encoding to which you want the data to be converted.

Include target encoding signature: This option is only available when converting to UTF-8 (Windows code page 65001) or UCS-4 (code page 12000 or 12001). Select to include the character encoding signature—also known as the byte order mark—at the beginning of the target string.

Default character on translation: You may enter a character to be used to replace all those characters that cannot be found in the source encoding. If you leave this box empty, they will be simply stripped from the data, so you may consider using a space as a place holder for unidentified characters.

Related topics:

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

10.1.13 Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties

Windows Print Converter action tasks are designed to convert Windows print files into Line Printer files, that can then be used in a variety of other PlanetPress Watch/Server tasks. Typically, Windows Print Converter action tasks are located below WinQueue input tasks (note that the latter include options specific to Windows Print Converter action tasks).

The full conversion process is performed in two phases:

- The Windows print file is first converted into an XML file in which each printable character appears with its horizontal and vertical coordinates.
- The XML file is then converted into a standard Line Printer file.

Note that although it is more common to perform both phases in a single pass, each phase can be performed selectively, as required.

Windows Print Converter action task properties are as follows:

General tab

EMF to XY group

Select this option if the file received by this task is a Windows print file. This will prompt the task to perform the first phase of the process, and thus convert the file to an XML file. If this option is not selected, the input file will not be converted to an XML file (note that the task will fail if the file it receives is not an XML file). The settings included in this group fine tune the process. They let you control precisely which text blocks are recognized as belonging together in one line. This has particular affect when dealing with font size differences between consecutive passages of text, the distance from one text passage to another (word distance) as well as the base line offset (vertical distance). To find out if one text passage belongs to the one found before it, first the vertical distance, second the horizontal distance and finally, the font size difference are checked. Only if all three values lie within the tolerance are the two blocks recognized as belonging together. Additionally, you can control text passages whose horizontal distance has been recognized as out of the tolerance, but whose type size difference and vertical distance lie within the tolerance, outputting it in one line. At the output, these text passages are separated by a tabulator (ASCII code 9).

Font size difference: Indicates the smallest acceptable factor between minimum and maximum font size within one line. A value of 0.60 means that with a ratio from minimum to maximum font size (in points), that is less than 0.60, two text passages are not recognized as belonging together. For example, if two text passages are formatted with different font sizes. Passage 1 with 10, passage 2 with 18 point. The ratio 0.56 is smaller than the adjusted value 0.60. Therefore those two text passages are recognized as not belonging together.
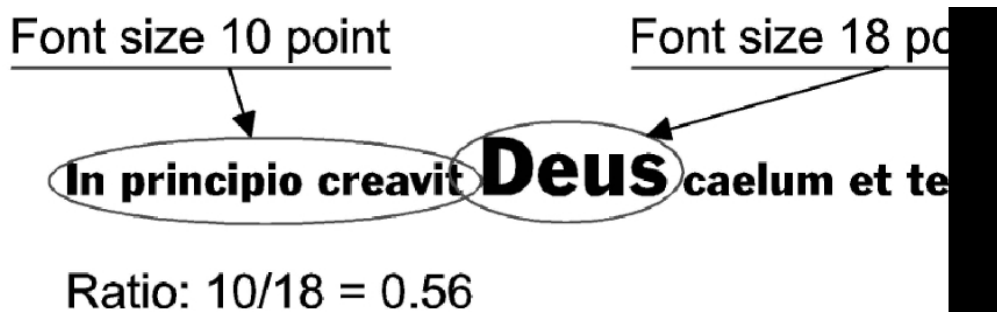
Word distance: Indicates the largest acceptable distance between two text passages, so that they are still recognized as belonging together. This the factor the font's mean character width is multiplied with. The value for the mean character width is taken from the corresponding font's attributes (for texts which are printed justified, it is suggested to raise this value up to about 2). For example, if the mean character width of the font example shown here corresponds to the width of the blank character (for other fonts it may be another sign). There is another text passage found whose horizontal distance is even bigger than the first one's mean character width, multiplied by factor 1.0. The two text passages are found to not belong together.
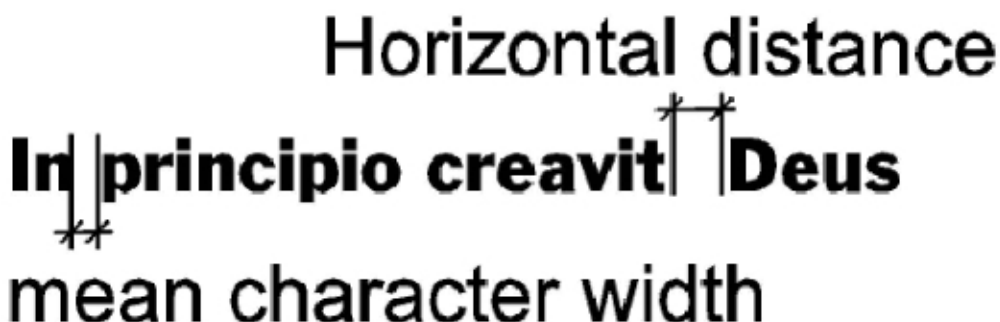
Vertical distance: Indicates the biggest acceptable vertical distance between two text passages so that they're still recognized as belonging together. This is the factor the font's height and size is multiplied with. The value for the font's height therefore is taken from the corresponding font's attributes. For example, if the height of that font example in 10 point size is 0.32 cm. There is a passage found that is positioned 0.15 cm above - which means 0.15/0.31 = 0.48 < 0.50 - the previous text passage. So the two passages are not recognized as belonging together.

Winport Translator

Select this option if the task is to generate a Line Printer file. This will prompt the task to perform the second phase of the process, and thus convert the XML file to a Line Printer file. If this option is not selected, the output file will thus be an XML file. The settings included in this group determine the format settings of the generated Line Printer file.

Character per inch (CPI): The number of individual characters per inch on a line of text.

Line per inch (LPI): The number of lines of text per inch.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties

10.1.14 Create Metadata Action Task Properties

Creates all the metadata information from a PlanetPress Design document.

Documents: Select a specific PlanetPress Design document you want all the jobs metadata information generated for. To use a document chosen at runtime for each job, enter a dynamic document name using a combination of text, variables and data selections. To enable the dynamic document name box, click inside it. To disable it, press Enter. Note that in the later case, you must be certain that the documents that will be chosen at runtime will in fact be available locally.

Add job information to the document: Select to prompt PlanetPress Watch to add the available job information elements in the header of the generated file. Note that this option is only enabled if a document was selected.

Related topics:

- Metadata Manipulation API Reference

10.1.15 Create PDF Action Task Properties

The new *Create PDF* plugin allows users running either *PlanetPress Office* or *PlanetPress Production* to create native PDF outputs without an active *PlanetPress Imaging* license.

PDFs created with the new *Create PDF* plugin will effectively replace the current data file in any given process using such a plugin.

Create PDF action task properties are as follows:

General Tab

Documents: Select a specific PlanetPress Design document if you want all the jobs to be generated with that document. To use a document chosen at runtime for each job, enter a dynamic document name using a combination of text, variables and data selections. To enable the dynamic document name box, click inside it. To disable it, press Enter. Note that in the later case, you must be certain that the documents that will be chosen at runtime will in fact be available locally or at the selected host. Note that None cannot be selected since a document is required to generate a document.

Run mode group

Printer centric: Select to send the document along with the trigger and data to PlanetPress Image.
Optimized PostScript Stream: Select to merge the selected document with the data received by this task before sending it to PlanetPress Image. Note that some features, such as the Time and Date PlanetPress Talk functions, require that this option be selected.
Add job information to the document: Select to add the available job info variables in the "header" of the generated output file.

Other Notes

Here's a list of the hardcoded PDF values for files generated with this new plugin. Basically, these settings correspond to Digital Imaging and PlanetPress Image settings for **Standard Quality**:

- PDF version
  - 1.4
- Job option
  - Standard quality
- General
  - Compress text and line art
  - Auto-rotate pages
  - Optimize for fast web view
- Author: PlanetPress
- Keywords: PlanetPress; Create PDF Plug-in
- Monochrome images
  - Compression: CCITT
  - Pixels per inch: 1200
- Grayscale images
  - Compression: Auto
  - Downsampling: Bicubic
  - Pixels per inch: 300
- Color images
  - Compression: Auto
  - Downsampling: Bicubic
  - Pixels per inch: 150
- Security
  - Allow printing
  - Allow changing the document

- ▪ Allow content copying
- ▪ Allow form filling
- Font
  - ▪ Embed all fonts
  - ▪ Subset embedded fonts
- Open options
  - ▪ Zoom factor: Fit in window
  - ▪ Default view: Page only

10.1.16 In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties

In-Stream Splitter action tasks are used to split non-emulated data files into multiple data files that are passed to subsequent tasks in the process. Note that performing the splitting process on raw, non-emulated data speeds up the splitting process.

In-Stream Splitter action task properties are as follows:

In-Stream Splitter action tasks are used to split non-emulated data files into multiple data files that are passed to subsequent tasks in the process. Note that performing the splitting process on raw, non-emulated data speeds up the splitting process.

In-Stream Splitter action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Split data file on page group: Select to split the data file based on pages (rather than on a word found within the data stream) and to activate the options from this group, which are used to tailor exactly how you want the page based splitting process to take place.

Page breaks on form feed: Select if you want to start a new data page whenever a form feed character is found.

Page breaks on a number of lines: Select if you want start a new data page whenever a given number of lines has been counted. Enter the number of lines in the edit box below or use the spin buttons.

Page(s) per output: Select if you want the file generated by the splitter to include multiple data pages. Enter the number of pages in the edit box below or use the spin buttons.

Split data file on a word group: Select to split the data file based on a word found within the data stream (rather than on based on pages) and to activate the options from this group, which are used to tailor exactly how you want the word based splitting process to take place.

Word: Enter the word to use as the splitting criteria. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements or any combination of these. You may also use the Get Data button to get a static string of characters from the sample data file. If you use this option, the coordinates of the data you will select will be added to the From column and To column boxes below.

From column: Enter a value corresponding to the first column in which the splitter must start searching for the word.

To column: Enter a value corresponding to the last column in which the splitter must start searching for the word.

Match case: Select to force the splitter to match the character casing of the string of characters entered above with the characters found in the file. If this option is selected, "DAY" and "Day" will not be considered as matching the search string "day".

Where to split: By default, the task splits the file at the beginning of the line on which the search word is found (the default value is 0). If you want the task to split the file a certain number of lines before or after that line, enter a value other than 0 in this box. Enter 1, for example, to split the file at the beginning of the

line that precedes the line on which the search word is found.

Before: If you entered a value other than 0 in the Where to split box, select this option if you want to split the file a given number of lines before the search word.

After: If you entered a value other than 0 in the Where to split box, select this option if you want to split the file a given number of lines after the search word.

When word is found: By default, the task splits the file every time the search word is found (the default value is 1). If you want the task to split the file only when the search word has been found twice, for example, enter the number 2 in this box.

Related topics:

- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties
- PDF Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 180)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties (Page 179)
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

10.1.17 Load External File Action Properties

Load External File Action tasks are used to replace the current job file by the designated text file.

Load External File action task properties are as follows:

General tab

External file: The path to the file you want the job file to be replaced with. You may browse to the file using the browse button on the right of the field.

10.1.18 PDF Splitter Action Task Properties

PDF Splitter action tasks are used to split emulated PDF data files into multiple data files that are passed to subsequent tasks in the process.

PDF Splitter action task properties are as follows:

General Tab

Split on page group: Select to split the data file based on pages (rather than on a word found within the PDF data) and to activate the option from this group, which is used to tailor exactly how you want the page based splitting process to take place.

PDF Splitter action tasks are used to split emulated PDF data files into multiple data files that are passed to subsequent tasks in the process.

PDF Splitter action task properties are as follows:

General Tab

Split on page group: Select to split the data file based on pages (rather than on a word found within the PDF data) and to activate the option from this group, which is used to tailor exactly how you want the page based splitting process to take place.

Page(s) per output: Enter the number of pages to include in the file generated by the splitter in this edit box below or use the spin buttons.

Split PDF file on a word group : Select to split the data file whenever a given region is found within the PDF data file (rather than on based on pages), or whenever the regoin found at a given location changes, and to activate the options from this group, which are used to tailor exactly how you want the region based splitting process to take place.

On region content change: Select if you want the data file to be split when the word found at a given location changes.

Get: Click to go to the Data Selector and select the location associated with the On region change option.

Specific word: Enter the word to use as the splitting criteria. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements or any combination of these. You may also use the Get Data button to get a static string of characters from the sample data file. If you use this option, the coordinates of the data you will select will be added to the Left, Right, Top and Bottom boxes below.

Left: Enter a value corresponding to the left coordinate on which the splitter must start searching for the region.

Right: Enter a value corresponding to the right coordinate on which the splitter must start searching for the region.

Top: Enter a value corresponding to the top coordinate on which the splitter must start searching for the region.

Bottom: Enter a value corresponding to the bottom coordinate on which the splitter must start searching for the region.

Match case: Select to force the splitter to match the character casing. Note that this setting applies both to the On region change and Specific word options. If this option is selected, "DAY" and "Day" will not be considered as matching the search string "day".

Trim selection: Select to force the splitter to strip empty trailing characters. When this option is not selected, blank trailing characters, if any, are considered in the matching process, so the word "DAY" will not be considered as matching the word "DAY". Note that this setting applies only to the On region change option.

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

Where to split: By default, the task splits the file at the beginning of the line on which the condition is met (the default value is 0). If you want the task to split the file a certain number of lines before or after that line, enter a value other than 0 in this box. Enter 1, for example, to split the file at the beginning of the line that precedes the line on which the condition is met.

Before: If you entered a value other than 0 in the Where to split box, select this option if you want to split the file a given number of lines before the line on which the condition is met.

After: If you entered a value other than 0 in the Where to split box, select this option if you want to split the file a given number of lines after the line on which the condition is met.

When condition is found: By default, the task splits the file every time the condition is met (the default value is 1). If you want the task to split the file only when the condition has been met twice, for example, enter the number 2 in this box.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties (Page 179)
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

10.1.19 Send to Process Action Task Properties

Introduction

The **Send to Process** action task transfers job file(s), job information and all related files (metadata, sorted metadata, etc.) to a selected process. This action task is asynchroneous, meaning the calling process, Process1, will continue its own execution just after calling its secondary process, Process2, which will start and execute on its own.

General tab

Process: The name of the target process to send current job to. Note that **startup** and **subprocesses** are not available.

Note: The called process will escape its first node, the input task, since its data, job files and job information come from the calling process. This implies escaping the called process's default job information as well as its process schedule, since the first node is simply never executed, and those values are never initialized.

10.1.20 Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties

Emulated Data Splitter action tasks are used to split emulated data files (with the exception of XML and database data files - refer to XML Splitter Action Task Properties or Database Splitter Action Task Properties) into multiple data files that are passed to subsequent tasks in the process.

Emulated Data Splitter action tasks are used to split emulated data files (with the exception of XML and database data files - refer to XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184) or Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)) into multiple data files that are passed to subsequent tasks in the process.

The data received by the process is typically prepared for a given output device using a pre-set emulation. In some cases, the data's original emulation may also have been changed by a Change emulation action task (see Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)).

Using an emulation to format the data before splitting provides the most splitting options, but slows down the process. Splitting a data file containing a few hundred thousand pages may take several hours. So you may choose to use non-emulated data to speed up the splitting process (see In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)).

Emulated Data Splitter action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Split data file on emulated page group: Select to split the data file based on pages (rather than on a word found within the emulated data) and to activate the option from this group, which is used to tailor exactly how you want the page based splitting process to take place.
Page(s) per output: Enter the number of pages to include in the file generated by the splitter in this edit box below or use the spin buttons.

Split data file on a word group : Select to split the data file whenever a given word is found within the emulated data file (rather than on based on pages), or whenever the word found at a given location changes, and to activate the options from this group, which are used to tailor exactly how you want the word based splitting process to take place.

Word change: Select if you want the data file to be split when the word found at a given location changes.

Get: Click to go to the Data Selector and select the location associated with the Word change option.

Specific word: Enter the word to use as the splitting criteria. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements or any combination of these. You may also use the Get Data button to get a static string of characters from the sample data file. If you use this option, the coordinates of the data you will select will be added to the From line, To line, From column and To column boxes below.

From line: Enter a value corresponding to the first line on which the splitter must start searching for the word.

To line: Enter a value corresponding to the last line on which the splitter must start searching for the word.

From column: Enter a value corresponding to the first column in which the splitter must start searching for the word.

To column: Enter a value corresponding to the last column in which the splitter must start searching for the word.

Match case: Select to force the splitter to match the character casing. Note that this setting applies both to the Specific Word and Word change options. If this option is selected, "DAY" and "Day" will not be considered as matching the search string "day".

Trim selection: Select to force the splitter to strip empty trailing characters. When this option is not selected, blank trailing characters, if any, are considered in the matching process, so the word "DAY" will not be considered as matching the word "DAY". Note that this setting applies only to the Word change option.

Where to split: By default, the task splits the file at the beginning of the line on which the condition is met (the default value is 0). If you want the task to split the file a certain number of lines before or after that line, enter a value other than 0 in this box. Enter 1, for example, to split the file at the beginning of the line that precedes the line on which the condition is met.

Before: If you entered a value other than 0 in the Where to split box, select this option if you want to split the file a given number of lines before the line on which the condition is met.

After: If you entered a value other than 0 in the Where to split box, select this option if you want to split the file a given number of lines after the line on which the condition is met.

When condition is found: By default, the task splits the file every time the condition is met (the default value is 1). If you want the task to split the file only when the condition has been met twice, for example, enter the number 2 in this box.

Related topics:

10.1.21 XML Splitter Action Task Properties

XML Splitter action tasks use the XSLT language to split XML data files into multiple XML data files that are passed to subsequent tasks in the process. The XML splitter includes options to add a new root node within the generated files, as well as to change the original file's encoding to UTF8. Note that the XML Splitter cannot process files larger than 30 megabytes.

XML Splitter action task properties are as follows:

XML Splitter action tasks use the XSLT language to split XML data files into multiple XML data files that are passed to subsequent tasks in the process. The XML splitter includes options to add a new root node within the generated files, as well as to change the original file's encoding to UTF8. Note that the XML Splitter cannot process files larger than 30 megabytes.

XML Splitter action task properties are as follows:

General tab

This tab lets you choose the splitter settings for default PlanetPress Watch/Server XSLT engine. If you want to use your own XSLT engine, click the Alternate XSLT Engine tab.

Split method: Use this box only if you want to edit the standard XSLT script that will be used to split the XML file. First use the Standard XML splitter option to define the standard settings. Then, to change the standard XSLT script, select Advanced XML splitter and edit the script as required.

Standard XML splitter options

The following options are only displayed when the Standard XML splitter option is selected in the Split method box.

Condition node path: In the tree view, select the XML node to consider to determine when to split the file. To indicate whether you want the file to be split whenever this node is encountered or whenever the information in this node changes, see the Condition group below.

Condition group: Use this group to indicate whether you want the file to be split whenever this node is encountered or whenever the information in this node changes.

When condition node is found: Select if you want the file to be split whenever the node selected in the Condition node path box is encountered.

When condition node content changes: Select if you want the file to be split whenever the information stored in node selected in the Condition node path box changes.
When this option is selected, the split files typically contain more information (all the orders for a given customer, for example).

New file root structure group: Use this group to tailor the structure of the generated XML files.

Keep XML structure: Select if you want the generated files to have the exact same structure as the original XML file (all the way to the root node).

Add new root node: Select this option and enter a root node name in the box to the right, if you want the generated files to have a structure that begins with a new root name and that then goes directly to the node on which the file was split, as indicated in the Split on node box below.

Encoding group: This group lets you indicate wether you want the splitter to use the file's own encoding or the universal encoding UTF8 to process the file. Note that if the file contains no indication as to which encoding should be used, the default system encoding will be used. This may result in errors being generated or split files that contain bad data. Using the UTF8 encoding can prevent such errors.

Use UTF8 encoding: Select if you want to use the UTF8 encoding to process the file.

Use file's encoding: Select if you want to use the XML file's own encoding to process the file.

Advanced XML splitter options

The following options and buttons are only displayed when the Advanced XML splitter option is selected in the Split method box. Note that you should not use this option before you have completed all the required settings using the Standard XML splitter option.

Refresh XSLT: Once you have made all the required settings using the Standard XML splitter option, click this button to display the XML code generated by the XML splitter. You can then use the box below to edit the code as required.

{WATCHTEMPFOLDER} file separator: Use this box to edit the default XML file separator (/).

Alternate XSLT Engine tab

This tab lets you choose the splitter settings for your own XSLT engine. If you want to use the default PlanetPress Watch/Server XSLT engine, click the General tab.
Use alternate XSLT engine group: Select this option to enable the box and the buttons included in this group.
Path and parameters for the alternate engine: Enter your XSLT engine's absolute path (use quotes for non DOS 8.3 compliant paths) followed by its required operators and parameters (you must know exactly which operators and parameters your XSLT engine requires and in which order they must appear in the command prompt used to launch the engine). Note that you should not enter fixed values for the following parameters: for the XSLT stylesheet parameter, click the XSLT file button to add the {XSLTFILE} variable to the command prompt; for the source XML data file parameter, click the Data file button to add the {DATAFILE} variable; for the output file parameter, click the Output file(s) button to add the {OUTPUTFILE} variable (when you click the buttons below, the corresponding parameters are automatically added at the current cursor position).

These variables will be replaced by the correct information at runtime.

XSLT file: Click to add the {XSLTFILE} variable to the command prompt displayed in the box above.

Data file: Click to add the {DATAFILE} variable to the command prompt displayed in the box above.

Output file(s): Click to add the {OUTPUTFILE} variable to the command prompt displayed in the box above.

Browse button: Click this button and browse to select the XSLT engine you want the XML splitter to use.

Related topics:

10.1.22 Database Splitter Action Task Properties

Database Splitter are used to split database files into multiple data files that are passed to subsequent tasks in the process.

Database Splitter action task properties are as follows:

Database Splitter are used to split database files into multiple data files that are passed to subsequent tasks in the process.

Database Splitter action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Split group: Use this group to indicate how you want the file to be split.

Field value change: Select if you want the file to be split based on changes in the values of a selected

database field (the value in the ClientID field changes, for example).

Field value condition: Select if you want the file to be split based on a condition set for the values of a selected database field (the value in the Order field equals 1, for example).

Field count: Select if you want the file to be split whenever a given number of pages or data pages has been reached.
The following options are only displayed when the Field value change or the Field value condition option has been selected at the top of the dialog box.

Field: Enter the name of the field upon which to base the splitter condition. Note that you can use the popup menu's Get Data command to select the field and populate this box automatically.

The following options are only displayed when the Field value condition option has been selected at the top of the dialog box.

Operator: Select the condition to fulfill for the condition to be true and thus for the splitting process to take place.

Value: Enter the condition value. Note that you can use the popup menu's Get Data command to select the value and populate this box automatically

Match case: Select to force the splitter to match the character casing when resolving the Field value change or Field value condition. If this option is selected, a change from "DAY" to "Day" will be considered as a valid field value change, and "DAY" and "Day" will not be considered as equal values.

Where to split group: Options from this group are used to define a number of pages or records before or after which the file is to be split.

Pages or records: Enter the number of pages or records before or after which the file is to be split. Enter 0 if you want the file to be split right before or after the page or record that matches the set condition.

Before or after: Options from this list box are used to define exactly how the file is to be split. Select Records before if you want the file to be split a given number of records before the field that matches the set condition. Select Records after if you want the file to be split a given number of records after the field that matches the set condition. Select Pages before if you want the file to be split a given number of pages before the field that matches the set condition. Select Pages after if you want the file to be split a given number of pages after the field that matches the set condition.

Split when condition is found group: Use this group if you want the condition to be met a multiple number of times before splitting the file. Leave the default value of 1 in the Times box if you want to split the file every time the condition is met, but enter a value of 2, for example, if you want to split the file every second time the condition is met.

Time(s): Enter the number of times the condition must be met before the file is to be split.
The following options are only displayed when the Field count option has been selected at the top of the dialog box.

Maximum records per file: Enter the maximum number of records to include in each file. Enter 0 for no limit.

Maximum pages per file: Enter the maximum number of pages to include in each file. Enter 0 for no limit.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- PDF Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 180)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties

10.1.23 Generic Splitter Action Task Properties

In previous versions of PlanetPress Watch/Server, only this splitter was available. Although it is still available for backward compatibility reasons, we strongly suggest that you create new splitter action tasks using the new splitters listed below. To add tremendous leap in performance to your existing processes, we even suggest replacing existing generic splitter action tasks with specific splitter action tasks.

Generic Splitter action task properties are as follows:

Split configuration tab

Split data file on: Use this box to choose the item on which top split the file. The options available depend on whether or not the Use emulation box is checked (see below).

Use emulation: Check to emulate the data before splitting the file. This lets you split the file on a word, a word change, a page number, a database field value or a database field change. When this option is not checked, you can only split the file on a form feed, a specific number of lines, or a chain of characters. See below for detailed information on any of these splitting methods.

A word

If you choose "A word" in the Split data file on list box (the Use emulation option must be selected), the following boxes are displayed.

Word: Enter the string of characters to search for as the splitting criteria. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements or any combination of these.

Get: Click to get a static string of characters from the sample data file. If you use this button, the coordinates of the data you will select will be added to the Word is between lines and Word is between columns groups below.

Word is between lines group

From and To: Enter a vertical search region defined as starting from a given line and ending at a given line. If you enter 1 in the From box and 1 in the To box, the Generic Splitter will search for the string of characters entered above only in the first line of every page. If you enter 1 in the From box and 10 in the To box, the Generic Splitter will search in the ten first lines of every page. Note that the actual search region is a combination of the vertical and horizontal search regions.

Word is between columns group

From and To: Enter a horizontal search region defined as starting from a given column and ending at a given column. If you enter 1 in the From box and 5 in the To box, the Generic Splitter will search for the string of characters only in the first five column (five first characters of every line selected above).

Consider case: Select to force the Generic Splitter to match the character casing of the string of characters entered above with the characters found in the file. If this option is selected, "DAY" and "Day" will not be considered as matching the search string "day".

Where to split group

Pages: Enter exactly where to split the file. Enter 1 to split the file 1 page before or after the string, 2 to split the file 2 pages before or after the string, or 0 to split the file immediately before or after the string.

Before or after: In the previous box, you entered exactly where you wanted to split the file, here is where you specify whether you want the split before or after.

Split when word found: You may not want to split the file every time the string of characters entered above is found, but only every other time, or every third time. If so, enter the number of times in this box.

A Word change

If you choose "A word change" in the Split data file on list box (the Use emulation option must be selected), the following boxes are displayed.

Get: Click to select a search region. The coordinates of the selected region will be added to the Word is in line box and the Word is between columns group below. The Generic Splitter will look for changes in the string of characters appearing in that region.

Word is in line: Enter the line on which to search for the word change. If you enter 1, the Generic Splitter will consider only in the first line of every page. Note that the actual search region is a combination of the vertical and horizontal search regions.

Word is between columns group

From and To: Enter a horizontal search region defined as starting from a given column and ending at a given column. If you enter 1 in the From box and 1 in the To box, the Generic Splitter will search for the string of characters entered above only in the first column of the line selected above. If you enter 1 in the From box and 10 in the To box, the Generic Splitter will search in the ten first columns of the line selected above.

Consider case: Select to force the Generic Splitter to consider a change in character casing as a word change. If this option is selected, "DAY" will be considered as different from "day".

Trim selection: Select to force the Generic Splitter to trim empty characters at the beginning and end of the data found in the search region. If this option is not selected, "DAY" will be considered as different from "DAY".

Where to split group

Pages: Enter exactly where to split the file. Enter 1 to split the file 1 page before or after the string, 2 to split the file 2 pages before or after the string, or 0 to split the file immediately before or after the string.

Before or after: In the previous box, you entered exactly where you wanted to split the file, here is where you specify whether you want the split before or after.

Split when word changed: You may not want to split the file every time the string of characters entered above changes, but only every other time, or every third time. If so, enter the number of times in this box.

A Page Number

If you choose "A page number" in the Split data file on list box (the Use emulation option must be selected), the following boxes are displayed.

Pages per output file: Enter a number of pages after which to split the file. If you enter 3, for example, the Generic Splitter will split the file every time it has counted three pages. A 10 page file would be split in 4 files, the first three being three pages long and the last one only 1 page long.

View data file: Click to view the sample data file and to cycle through the pages.

A Database Field Value

If you choose "A database value" in the Split data file on list box (the Use emulation option must be selected), the following box is displayed.

Field: Enter the name of the field that the Generic Splitter must check (only alphanumeric fields can be used—selecting a binary field, for instance, will cause the job to fail). If you enter "ID", for example, the Generic Splitter will only look in the field named "ID" for the value entered below. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements or any combination of these.

Operator: Select the appropriate comparison operator. If you select Equals, the Generic Splitter will only consider that the condition is met when it finds a perfect match ("day" and "day", for example). If you select Contains, the Generic Splitter will consider that the condition is met whenever it finds the string of characters entered in the Value box, even if the database field contains additional characters ("day" and "days", for example, would be considered a match).

Value: Enter the string of characters to search for as the splitting criteria. Like the Field box, this is also a variable property box.

Consider case: Select to force the Generic Splitter to match the character casing of the string of characters entered in the Value box with the characters found in the file. If this option is selected, "DAY" and "Day" will not be considered as matching the search string "day".
Where to split, Pages or records: Enter exactly where to split the file. Enter 1 to split the file 1 page or record before or after the string, 2 to split the file 2 pages or records before or after the string, or 0 to split the file immediately before or after the string.

Where to split group

Before or after: In the previous box, you entered where you wanted to split the file. Here is where you specify whether you want the Generic Splitter to split the file X number of pages or records before or after the string. Choose 5 in the Pages or records box and "Records after" in this box, for example, to split the file 5 records after the record that matches the condition.

Split when condition found: You may not want to split the file every time the string of characters entered in the Value box is found, but only every other time, or every third time. If so, enter the number of times in this box.

A Database Field Change

If you choose "A database field change" in the Split data file on list box (the Use emulation option must be selected), the following box is displayed.

Field name: Enter the name of the field that the Generic Splitter must check. If you enter "ID", for example, the Generic Splitter will only look in the field named "ID" for the value entered below. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements or any combination of these.

Consider case: Select to force the Generic Splitter to match the character casing of the string of the values appearing in the selected database field. If this option is selected, "DAY" and "Day" will not be considered as matching the search string "day".

Where to split group

Pages or records: Enter exactly where to split the file. Enter 1 to split the file 1 page or record before or after the string, 2 to split the file 2 pages or records before or after the string, or 0 to split the file immediately before or after the string.

Before or after: In the previous box, you entered where you wanted to split the file. Here is where you specify whether you want the Generic Splitter to split the file X number of pages or records before or after the string. Choose 5 in the Pages or records box and "Records after" in this box, for example, to split the file 5 records after the record that matches the condition.

Split when condition found: You may not want to split the file every time the string of characters changes, but only every other time, or every third time. If so, enter the number of times in this box.

Form feed

If you choose "Form Feed" in the Split data file on list box (the Use emulation option must not be selected), the following box is displayed.

Pages per output file: Enter a number of pages after which to split the file (a page is counted every time a form feed character is encountered). If you enter 3, for example, the Generic Splitter will split the file after every third form feed character.

A number of lines

If you choose "A number of lines" in the Split data file on list box (the Use emulation option must not be selected), the following boxes are displayed.

Lines per page: Enter the number of lines after which to split the file. You may use the Pages per output file box below as a multiplier of the value entered here. If you enter 5 here and 5 in the box below, for instance, the Generic Splitter will always cut the data file after 25 lines of data (not considering the Also break on form feeds option below).

Pages per output file: You may enter a value here as a multiplier of the value entered in the box above.

Also break pages on form feeds: Select to split the file every time a form feed character is encountered, regardless of the number of lines counted.

A word in a stream

If you choose "A word in a stream" in the Split data file on list box (the Use emulation option must not be selected), the following box is displayed.

Word: Enter the string of characters to search for as the splitting criteria. You may also use the Get button to get a static string of characters from the sample data file. If you use this option, the coordinates of the data you will select will be added to the Word is between columns group below.

Word is between columns group

From and To: Enter a horizontal search region defined as starting from a given column and ending at a given column. If you enter 1 in the From box and 5 in the To box, the Generic Splitter will search for the string of characters entered above only in the first five columns of data (the five first characters of every line—since no emulation is used, this may include data formatting characters, such as quotes or commas).

Consider case: Select to force the Generic Splitter to match the character casing of the string of characters entered above with the characters found in the file. If this option is selected, "DAY" and "Day" will not be considered as matching the search string "day".

Where to split group

Lines: Enter exactly where to split the file. Enter 1 to split the file 1 line before or after the string, 2 to split the file 2 lines before or after the string, or 0 to split the file immediately before or after the string.

Before or after: In the previous box, you entered exactly where you wanted to split the file, here is where you specify whether you want the split before or after.

Split when word found: You may not want to split the file every time the string of characters entered above is found, but only every other time, or every third time. If so, enter the number of times in this box.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

10.1.24 Add Document Action Properties

Add Document action tasks merge the data file they receive to a selected PlanetPress Design document (note that this document must be available on the computer running PlanetPress Watch/Server). The file it generates can then be stored using a Send to Folder output task, for example (if the folder in question is watched by a printer, the file can then be automatically printed).

Add Document action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Documents: Select a specific PlanetPress Design document if you want all the jobs to be merged with that document. To use a document chosen at runtime for each job, enter a dynamic document name using a combination of text, variables and data selections. To enable the dynamic document name box, click inside it.

To disable it, press Enter. Note that in the later case, you must be certain that the documents that will be chosen at runtime will in fact be available locally. Note that you cannot select None since this is an Add Document action task.

Add job information to the document: Select to prompt PlanetPress Watch to add the available job information elements in the header of the generated file. Note that this option is only enabled if a document was selected.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

10.1.25 Add/Remove Text Action Properties

Add/Remove Text action tasks can be used to perform the following actions on the data file they receive:

- To add or remove characters.
- To add or remove lines of data.
- To add the content of a text file.

Note that the content must be located at the beginning or the end of the data file.

Add/Remove Text action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Action group

Add: Select if you want the task to add content to the job file.

Remove: Select if you want the task to remove content from the job file.

Content: Select what the task will actually add or remove. Select Text file to add the whole content of a text file to the beginning or end of the job file. Select Characters to add the string of characters entered in the Characters box to the beginning or end of the job file, or to remove a given number of characters from the beginning or end of the job file. Select Lines to add the lines of text entered in the Lines box to the beginning or end of the job file, or to remove a given number of lines from the beginning or end of the job file.

Position: Select whether you want the task to add or remove content from the beginning or end of the job file.

Add CRLF after last line: Select if you want to add a CRLF (carriage return/line feed) character after the last line of text added to the job file. This option is only available when you choose to add lines of text to the job file.

ASCII file: Enter the path and name of the text file to be added to the job file, or use the browse button to navigate to this file. This box is only displayed when the Text file option is selected in the Content box.

Characters: Enter the string of characters to be added to the job file. This box is only displayed when the Characters option is selected in the Content box.

Lines: Enter the lines of text to be added to the job file.This box is only displayed when the Lines option is selected in the Content box.

Remove: Enter the number of characters or lines to be removed from the job file. This box is only displayed when Remove is selected in the Action group and when the Characters or Lines option is selected in the Content box.

Related topics:

10.1.26 Change Emulation Action Task Properties

Change Emulation action tasks are used to tell the tasks that follow them to use a different emulation to format the data they receive. So these tasks do not perform any operation as such on the data, but rather they modify the way subsequent tasks process the data they receive.

Change Emulation action tasks are typically used when a secondary input task brings new data that is not structured like the initial data into the process. By default, every task included in a process uses the emulation associated with the sample data file to structure the data before it processes it. Any task that must use a different emulation must be preceded by a Change Emulation action task. All the tasks that follow on the same branch will use the emulation chosen in the Change Emulation task.

New input brought into a process via a PlanetPress Database action task (see Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)) does not require to be followed by a Change Emulation action task, even if the structure of the new data is not the same as that of the sample data.

Change Emulation action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Add/remove characters: Enter the number of characters to add to, or remove from, the head of the data stream, or use the spin buttons to increment or decrement the value. Positive values add characters; negative values remove characters. This is useful when one or more characters of input data precede the start of the first data page. Note that certain control characters can be problematic. For example, the NUL character (hexadecimal 00) cannot be removed from the head of the data stream, and a backspace (hexadecimal 08) can cause unpredictable behavior. The Hex Viewer can be useful in helping determine the control characters that appear at the head of the data stream. Note that you cannot add characters in either a CSV or user-

defined emulation. Further note that if you remove characters in a CSV emulation, you should ensure that you do not inadvertently remove field or text delimiters.

Add/remove lines: Enter the number of lines to add to, or remove from, the head of the data stream, or use the spin buttons to increment or decrement the value. Positive values add lines; negative values remove lines. This is useful when one or more lines of input data precede the start of the first data page. Note that you cannot add lines in either a CSV or user-defined emulation.

Lines per page: Enter the number of lines each data page contains, or use the spin buttons to increment or decrement the value.

Pages in buffer: Enter the number of data pages you want the data page buffer to contain, or use the spin buttons to increment or decrement the value.

Read in binary mode: Select to have the Data Selector read the sample data file in binary mode. You select this if you intend to run the document on a printer that is set to binary mode. In binary mode, the printer reads the end of line characters (CR, LF, and CRLF) as they appear in the data stream and does not perform any substitution. A printer that does not support binary mode or is not running in binary mode replaces any CR, LF, or CRLF that appears at the end of a line of data with a LF. Note, however, that it replaces a line feed followed by a carriage return (LFCR) with two LFs. Binary mode is the recommended printer mode when you use an ASCII emulation.

Cut on FF character: Select to have the document start a new data page when it encounters a form feed character in the data stream. If you select Cut on FF character, you have two conditions that signal the end of a data page: the form feed character and the number of lines set in the Lines per page box.

View Selector: Click to go to the Data Selector to set the properties of this task.

ASCII

The following options are displayed when the ASCII emulation is selected.

Tab on CR: Select to have the document insert a tab after each carriage return character it encounters. Set the number of spaces in the tab using the Number of spaces in the tab box. This option is available only if you selected Read in binary mode. If you cleared Read in binary mode, the printer replaces any end of line characters (CR, LF, or CRLF) it encounters with a LF.

How many spaces in a tab: If you selected Tab on CR, use this box to set the number of spaces you want that tab to contain. Enter a value in the box, or use the spin buttons to adjust the value.

Number of spaces to skip for 1 tab: Enter the number of spaces you want the document to use for a tab, or use the spin buttons to adjust the value.

Remove HP PCL escapes: Select to have the document remove any Hewlett Packard Printer Control Language (HP PCL) escape sequences it encounters.

CSV (comma separated values)

The following options are displayed when the CSV emulation is selected.

Text delimiter: Enter the character that starts and ends the data in each field of the record. If you do not set a text delimiter and the data in a field contains the character you set as the delimiter, the document splits that data into two fields. If you want to use a backslash character (\) as a delimiter, you must precede it with another backslash character (thus you would enter \\). You can also specify an ASCII character using its octal value preceded by a backslash (for example, \041 is the exclamation mark character [!]).

Force one record per page: Select to force a single record per data page. If you clear the selection, the document fills the data page completely, splitting a record across data pages if necessary. If you want to avoid splitting a record across data pages, yet have several records in the buffer, select Force one record per page, and, when you stabilize your data, set Pages in buffer to the number of records you want the buffer to hold.

Field delimiter: Enter the character that separates the fields of each record in the input data. If you want to use a tab as a delimiter, select Set tab as field delimiter. If you want to use a backslash character (\) as a delimiter, you must precede it with another backslash character (thus you would enter \\). You can also specify an ASCII character using its octal value preceded by a backslash (for example, \041 is the exclamation mark character [!]).

Set tab as field delimiter: Select to define a tab as the character that separates the fields of each record in the input data. Clear to use the Delimiter box to define that character.

ChannelSkip

The following options are displayed when the Channel Skip emulation is selected.

Skip page: Enter the channel skip code that, in your data, signals the start of a new data page. In standard channel skip emulation, a 1 (one) signals the start of a new data page. If a 1 appears in the first column of your data, it is likely the channel skip codes are standard, and that only minor adjustments to the other codes, if any, will be necessary.

No line feed: Enter the channel skip code that tells the document to ignore any line feed character (LF) that appears at the end of the line. This causes the next line to print over the current line, and is a technique impact printers use to print a line, or elements of a line, in bold or with underlining. For example, the input data for an impact printer might underline text by placing the text to underline on one line, and the underscore characters of the underline on the following line. The first character of the line with the text is a code that tells the printer to ignore the LF at the end of that line. The result is underlined text. It is important to understand what happens when you tell the channel skip emulation in PlanetPress Design to ignore the LF at the end of a line. Recall that the emulation stores each line of data in the data page buffer, and that each cell of the data page buffer can contain at most a single character. If the emulation ignores the LF at the end of a line, it must determine whether to overwrite the cells of the last line of data it stored. In this case, it compares the character in each cell in the line with the one in the new line destined for that cell. If the character in the cell is a space or an underscore, it overwrites that character with the one from the new line. If the character in the cell is not a space or an underscore, it leaves it intact.

Skip x lines: Use these boxes to enter any channel skip codes in your data that tell the document to skip a specific number of lines. If you want to enter a backslash character (\) as a code, you must precede it with another backslash character (thus you would enter \\). You can also specify an ASCII character as a code using its octal value preceded by a backslash (for example, \041 is the exclamation mark character [!]).

Char, Skip to line: Use these boxes to enter any channel skip codes in your data that tell the document to skip to a specific line. Enter the code in the Char box; enter the line number in the Skip to line box or use the spin buttons to adjust its value. If you want to use a backslash character (\) as a code, you must precede it with another backslash character (thus you would enter \\). You can also specify an ASCII character as a code using its octal value preceded by a backslash (for example, \041 is the exclamation mark character [!]).

Go to column: Use this to enter the channel skip code in your data that tells the document to advance to a specific column. Enter the code in the Char box to the left of the Go to column label, and use the box on the right of the Go to column label to set the column number. This is useful when your data contains redundant lines that were originally created to bold a line on a line printer. By entering a Go to column value that is greater than the width of the data page, you can remove the second line by shifting the contents of the second line outside the data page.

XML

The following option is displayed when the XML emulation is selected.

Cache XML data: When this option is selected, PlanetPress Watch/Server only reloads the data if the size or modified date of XML file changes (loading an XML file can take a long time).

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)

10.1.27 Create VDX Action Task Properties

Create VDX action tasks generate VDX compliant documents. Since Create VDX tasks are not output tasks, the documents they create are typically passed on to the following task. They are otherwise saved to an archive folder.

Create VDX action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Documents: Select a specific VDX compliant PlanetPress Design document if you want all the jobs to be merged with that document. To use a document chosen at runtime for each job, enter a dynamic document name using a combination of text, variables and data selections. To enable the dynamic document name box, click inside it. To disable it, press Enter. Note that in the later case, you must be certain that the documents that will be chosen at runtime will in fact be available locally. Note that None can only be selected if the data received by the task already includes a VDX document and trigger.

Run mode group

Printer centric: Select to send the document along with the trigger and data to PlanetPress Image.

Optimized PostScript Stream: Select to merge the selected document with the data received by this task before sending it to PlanetPress Image. Note that some features, such as the Time and Date PlanetPress Talk functions, require that this option be selected.

Add job information to the document: Select to prompt PlanetPress Watch to add the available job information elements in the header of the generated file. Note that this option is only enabled if a document was selected.

Data stream group

Use VDX as new data stream: Select to pass the VDX document generated by this task to the following task.

Use original data stream (with no document): Select to pass only the data received by this task to the following task. The VDX document generated by this task is therefore only saved to the archive folder (see below).

Use job file, trigger (with document): Select to pass the data received by this task along with the selected VDX compliant document and the corresponding trigger to the following task. These can then be sent to a PostScript printer where the document will be executed and merged with the data. The VDX document generated by this task is therefore only saved to the archive folder (see below).

Filename: Enter the name under which you want to save the VDX document generated by this task. Note that this box cannot be used if the VDX is used as the new data stream, but that it must otherwise be used. Not using the VDX as the new data stream and not providing a name under which to store it will result in a failed task. To prevent each new file from overwriting the previous one, you should use variable names. As with any variable property box, you can use any combination of text, variables and data selections. Note that if you use file name masks that include dots, such as Statement.%y.@(1,1,1,1,25,KeepCase,Trim) or Job.%f, for example, you must add quotation marks at the beginning and end of the file name ("Statement.%y.%m.@(1,1,1,1,25,KeepCase,Trim)" or "Job.%f"). Otherwise, when the file is saved, anything appearing after the last dot is replaced by the file's extension characters (and the file name thus becomes Statement.2005.vdx instead of Statement.2005.255842.vdx, or Job.vdx instead of Job.544872.vdx). Failing to add the quotation marks may result in files being overwritten.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

10.1.28 Decompress Action Task Properties

Decompress action tasks decompress zipped job files (files compressed as zip files).

Decompress action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Zip file name: Enter the name of the zipped file. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements, data selections, or any combination of these.

Output folder: Enter the name of the folder in which you want the decompressed files to be stored.

File mask: Enter a file name mask to specify which files must be decompressed. Leave the default value of *.* to decompress all the files found within the zip.

Password: Enter a password if the zip file is password protected.

Restore path structure: Select if you want the complete file structure to be rebuilt from the output folder to the decompressed files.

Force directories: Select if you want to allow the system to create new folders when required. If this option is not select and the Decompress action task tries to save a file to a folder that does not exist, the task will fail.

Overwrite existing files: Select if you want decompressed files that have the same name as existing files to overwrite the existing files.

10.1.29 Digital Imaging Action Task Properties

Digital Imaging action tasks use PlanetPress Image to generate the same types of documents generated by PlanetPress Image output tasks (see PlanetPress Image Output Task Properties (Page 150)). Since Digital Imaging tasks are not output tasks, the documents they create are typically passed on to the following task. At any rate, the image files they generate are always saved, along with their index files (if any), to an archive folder.

Note that Digital Imaging action tasks, unlike PlanetPress Image output tasks, can only use a locally running session of PlanetPress Image.

Digital Imaging action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Documents: Select a specific PlanetPress Design document if you want all the jobs to be merged with that document. To use a document chosen at runtime for each job, enter a dynamic document name using a combination of text, variables and data selections. To enable the dynamic document name box, click inside it. To disable it, press Enter. Note that in the later case, you must be certain that the documents that will be chosen at runtime will in fact be available locally. Note that None cannot be selected since a document is required to create the image file.

Run mode group

Printer centric: Select to send the document along with the trigger and data to PlanetPress Image.

Optimized PostScript Stream: Select to merge the selected document with the data received by this task before sending it to PlanetPress Image. Note that some features, such as the Time and Date PlanetPress Talk functions, require that this option be selected.

Add job information to the document: Select to prompt PlanetPress Watch to add the available job

information elements in the header of the generated file. Note that this option is only enabled if a document was selected.

Output type: Select the image file type. If you select PDF, the DPI and Color Depth options (see below) are disabled and the options available in the PDF tab are enabled. JPEG is a lossy compression image format that creates small files, compressing continuous tone images (such as scanned photographs) well. TIFF is a higher quality format that is one of the standards for document exchange, useful for eventual printing or archiving. You have a choice of the following compressed TIFF formats: TIFF Group 3, TIFF Group 4, and TIFF Packed bits. You can also use the uncompressed TIFF format, which produces the largest files with the highest quality. TIFF is a versatile and platform-independent format. It is used in many digitizing projects as the format of choice for the digital masters. The TIFF Group 3 and Group 4 formats are efficient for document storage. The AutoStore, DocAccel and KYOcapture formats also generate TIFF files.

DPI: Enter the dots per inch (dpi) resolution of the output image. This property is enabled for all output types except PDF.

Color depth: Enter the color depth of the output image in bits per pixel (bpp). The color depth is measured in bits, because each pixel of the output image can be described with a varied number of bits. A higher bit number allows for more colors. It also increases the image file size. A 1-bit color depth produces monochrome images. 8-bits produce grayscale images (in PlanetPress Design you can have 8-bit color images, but these are reduced to grayscale if you select 8-bit here), while 24-bits produce full color images. For JPEG output, you cannot select a monochrome (1 bpp) color depth. For TIFF G3 and TIFF G4, monochrome (1 bpp) is the only Color depth option you can select. This property is enabled for all output types except PDF.

Multiple pages: Select to generate a single file containing multiple pages. When this option is not selected, PlanetPress Image creates a file for each page included in the output file. This property is enabled for all output types except PDF and JPEG.

Add page number: Select to put a page number on each page included in the output file. This option goes with the Multiple pages option and is only visible if either the AutoStore, DocAccel or KYOcapture format is selected.

Data stream group

Use the resulting file as the data stream: Select to pass the image file generated by this task to the following task. If you are creating a PDF file and want to digitally sign it, you must choose this option and pass the image file to a Digital Signature action task (see Digital Signature Action Task Properties).

Use original data stream (with no document): Select to pass only the data received by this task to the following task. The image file generated by this task is therefore only saved to the archive folder (see below).

Use job file, trigger (with document): Select to pass the data received by this task along with the selected document and the corresponding trigger to the following task. These can then be sent to a PostScript printer where the document will be executed and merged with the data. The image file generated by this task is therefore only saved to the archive folder (see below).

Archive folder: Enter the path of the folder to which the files generated by this task are to be archived. PDF index files (PDI and XML) are also put in this folder.

File name: Enter the name of the output files generated by this task. To prevent each new file from overwriting the previous one, you should use variable names. As with any variable property box, you can use any combination of text, variables and data selections. When multiple files are generated for a single job, each file name includes a sequence number, such as in Invoice0, Invoice1, Invoice2. Note that if you use file name masks that include dots, such as Statement.%y.@(1,1,1,1,25,KeepCase,Trim) or Job.%f, for example, you must add quotation marks at the beginning and end of the file name ("Statement.%y.%m.@(1,1,1,1,25,KeepCase,Trim)" or "Job.%f"). Otherwise, when the file is saved, anything appearing after the last dot is replaced by the file's extension characters (and the file name thus becomes Statement.2005.pdf instead of Statement.2005.255842.pdf, or Job.tif instead of Job.544872.tif). Failing to add the quotation marks may result in files being overwritten.

Index: Specify the index file option. Select None to create no index file. Select PDI to create the index file in PDI format. Select XML and PDI to create the index file in both PDI and XML formats.

PDF Tab

The options available in this tab are only relevant if you chose PDF as the output type in the General tab.

Job options: Select the PDF output option that best describes your needs. This loads all the standard settings for the selected usage scenario. These settings can be changed as required. Note that if you make changes and then select a different output option, your changes will be lost.

General group

ASCII encode: Select to create the PDF file using ASCII characters (instead of the usual 8-bit binary format). This option produces a file suitable for transmission over a 7-bit ASCII link. This option is useful if the PDFs need to be opened in a text editor, sent across networks, or sent via email using a program that does not support binary files. This option also generates smaller files.

Flate compress text: Select to compress the text and line work in the file using the Flate compression filter. Flate is a compression method that works well on elements with large areas of single colors or repeating patterns, as well as on black-and-white elements that contain repeating patterns.

Auto rotate: Select to automatically rotate pages based on the orientation of the text or DSC comments.
Title (defaults to document's name): Enter a title for the document. If you leave this box empty, the document's name will be used as the document's title. Since this is a variable property box, you may use variables and data selections and let PlanetPress Watch/Server interpret this information at runtime.

Author: You may enter the name of the author of the document. Since this is a variable property box, you may use variables and data selections and let PlanetPress Watch/Server interpret this information at runtime.

Subject: You may enter the subject of the document. Since this is a variable property box, you may use variables and data selections and let PlanetPress Watch/Server interpret this information at runtime. Note that if you use a data selection in this box, you must be sure that the data that will be selected at runtime will not contain any parentheses, as this would cause the task to fail. If you suspect that the data may contain parentheses, you should use a Run script action task (see Run Script Action Task Property) with a Strip() function to strip them out.

Keywords: You may enter keywords for the document. Since this is a variable property box, you may use variables and data selections and let PlanetPress Watch/Server interpret this information at runtime.

Mono Images group

Mono compression: Select the compression to use for the monochrome images. Flate compression is lossless, so no data is lost during compression. Flate Mono works well on images with large areas of solid shades or repeating patterns, such as screen shots and simple images created with paint or drawing programs. CCITT typically yields the best compression of monochrome images. It is the compression method developed for fax transmissions.

Monochrome resolution: Select the resolution to use for monochrome images.

Gray Images group

Gray compression: Select the compression to use for the grayscale images. Flate is a lossless compression method, so no data is lost in the process. It works well on images with large areas of single shades or repeating patterns, such as screen shots and simple images created with paint or drawing programs. JPEG removes image data and may reduce image quality, but may be suitable for continuous-tone photographs containing more detail than can be reproduced onscreen or in print. Since JPEG eliminates data, it can achieve much smaller file sizes than Flate compression. Select Auto to let the application choose the best compression method automatically.

Grayscale downsample: Select the downsampling option. Downsampling reduces image size by breaking images down into small areas in which multiple pixels are replaced by single pixels. The Grayscale resolution you enter in the following box is used to control the downsampling process. Select None to prevent grayscale downsampling. Select Average to average pixel shades in each sample area and to replace the entire area

with a pixel of the average shade. Select Subsample to use a pixel in the center of the sample area and replace the entire area with that pixel value. This method is significantly faster, but results in images that are less smooth. Select Bicubic to use a weighted average to determine pixel shades. This method is the slowest but most precise and results in the smoothest tonal gradations.

Grayscale resolution: Select the resolution to use for grayscale images. Note that this setting has an impact on the grayscale downsampling process.

Color Images group

Color compression: Select the compression to use for the color images. Flate is a lossless compression method, so no data is lost in the process. It works well on images with large areas of single shades or repeating patterns, such as screen shots and simple images created with paint or drawing programs. JPEG removes image data and may reduce image quality, but may be suitable for continuous-tone photographs containing more detail than can be reproduced onscreen or in print. Since JPEG eliminates data, it can achieve much smaller file sizes than Flate compression. Select Auto to let the application choose the best compression method automatically.

Grayscale downsample: Select the downsampling option. Downsampling reduces image size by breaking images down into small areas in which multiple pixels are replaced by single pixels. The Color resolution you enter in the following box is used to control the downsampling process. Select None to prevent grayscale downsampling. Select Average to average pixel color in each sample area and to replace the entire area with a pixel of the average color. Select Subsample to use a pixel in the center of the sample area and replace the entire area with that pixel value. This method is significantly faster, but results in images that are less smooth. Select Bicubic to use a weighted average to determine pixel shades. This method is the slowest but most precise and results in the smoothest tonal gradations.

Color resolution: Select the resolution to use for color images. Note that this setting has an impact on the color downsampling process.

Security group

Permissions password: Enter a password in this box only if you want users to be able to change the security options of the generated PDF files.

User password: Enter a password in this box only if you want to prevent any user who does not have the password you enter in this box from opening the generated PDF files.

Allow printing: Select to let users print the generated PDF files.

No changes: Select to prevent users from changing the content of the document.

No copying: Select to prevent users from copying content from the PDF file. This also blocks applications that need direct access to the content of the PDF.

Allowannotations: Select to let users add or change annotations in the PDF file. Annotations include links, bookmarks, attachments and comments.

Font group

Embed all: Select to embed the entire font of all fonts used in the variable content document within the generated PDFs. Using this option may result in large PDFs, especially if many fonts are used. Note that those fonts installed by default with the Adobe Acrobat and Adobe Reader are never embedded.
Subset: Select to embed only a subset of the Type 1 and TrueType fonts used in the document. A font subset is in fact composed of only those characters that are actually used in the document. This option can only be used if the Embed all option is selected. Note that if more than 35% of the characters included in a font are used in the document, the entire font is embedded. This option often produces smaller PDF files and ensures proper PDF display.

Initial View group

Zoom factor: Select the magnification at which you want Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Reader (or other PDF

viewer) to open the generated PDF. Choose the Fit in window option to display the entire page using the available screen space, or choose a percentage of the actual document size.

View options: Select the information you want Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Reader (or other PDF viewer) to display with the generated PDF. Select Page only to leave the tabs area to the left of the PDF pages empty. Select Bookmarks and page to display the contents of the Bookmarks tab (you use data selection objects to create bookmarks in PlanetPress) alongside the PDF pages. Select Page tab and Page to display the content of the Pages tab (thumbnails of each PDF pages) alongside the PDF pages. Select Full screen to hide all screen contents except the PDF page, and expand the PDF page to the maximum size it can occupy onscreen.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Signature Action Task Properties (Page 205)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

10.1.30 Digital Signature Action Task Properties

Digital signature action tasks add security to the PDF files you generate using PlanetPress Watch/Server. Once you have created a PDF file using a Digital Imaging action task (see Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)), you can pass it on to a Digital Signature action task to digitally sign it.

The Digital Signature plugin will be available without limitation for a 30-day trial period, during which a reminder message will be displayed each time this new feature is used. Past this period, you will require a new PlanetPress Watch/Server activation code.

Digital Signature action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Private Key Configuration group

Private Key File: Enter the path and name of your private key file or click the Browse button to navigate to

that file. Your private key file is a file that you have generated using your security certificate.

Key Password: Enter the password to tour private key file.

Private Key Configuration group

Signature Information: Select to enter information that will be included in the document's signature.

Name: Enter the name that you want to appear in the signature information.

Location: Enter the location of the signing.

Reason: Enter the reason for signing the document.

Sign with digital signature field group

Sign with digital signature field: Select to display a visible signature (display a logo, for instance).

Signature Image File: Enter the path and name of the image file that you want to display as a visual signature or click the Browse button to navigate to that file.

Signature field name: Enter a name that will be used to identify your various visible signatures. If you have only a single signature file, you can leave the default name.

Signature font size: Enter the size in points of the font that will be used for your visible signature.

Unit of measure group

Unit of measure: Select either Inch or Centimetre as the unit of measure used to place and size your visible signature on the document.

Top: Enter the distance of the top of the visible signature as measured from the bottom of the page.

Left: Enter the distance of the left side of the visible signature as measured from the left of the page.

Width: Enter the width of the visible signature.

Height: Enter the height of the visible signature.

Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Add Document Action Properties (Page 192)
- Add/Remove Text Action Properties
- Change Emulation Action Task Properties (Page 195)
- Create VDX Action Task Properties (Page 198)
- Digital Imaging Action Task Properties (Page 201)
- Download to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 207)
- External Program Action Task Properties (Page 208)
- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- Open XSLT Action Task Properties (Page 210)
- Database Action Task Properties (Page 161)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)

10.1.31 Download to Printer Action Task Properties

Download to Printer action tasks are used to warn printers that the files that will be sent to them are to be stored to a specific location rather than printed. Note that each Download to Printer action task must be followed by a Printer Queue output task, that will take care of the sending part.

You can use Download to Printer action tasks to send various types of files, such as attachments, documents and fonts that are used in PlanetPress Design documents that are executed directly on the printers.

For images you should rather use Send Images to Printer action tasks (see Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)), as they provide image quality and conversion options.

Download to Printer action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Hard disk name and path (as required): Enter the name and path of the hard disk to which the file is to be saved (enter "%disk0%/PPFiles/Resources", for example, to save the file to the folder [ROOT]/PPFiles/ Resources located on a hard disk identified internally as "disk0"). Leave blank to save the printer's default hard disk and path. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements, data selections, or any combination of these.

File name: Enter the name under which you want the file to be saved. By default, this property is set to "%o", so the file is saved under its original name (this is often the best choice, for items such as font files, for instance).

File name case: Do not modify to leave the character casing of the file name as is. Select All uppercase to change all characters to upper case (README.TXT, for example). Select All lower case to change all characters to lowercase (readme.txt, for example).

Keep file extension: Select to use extensions when saving files. When this option is selected, if the task receives a file with the "txt" extension, for example, it will keep this extension even if it renames the file (as specified in the File name box).

Print confirmation page: Select to print the Variable content document download confirmation page when the download is successful.

Related topics:

10.1.32 External Program Action Task Properties

External Program action tasks are used to launch and execute other programs, typically legacy programs, and to process the files travelling through the process.

Note that in the case of scripts, Run Script action tasks are often a better solution.

External Program action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Executable file: Enter the name and path of an executable file (exe or com extension), batch file (bat extension), or command script (cmd extension) that can run in command mode. Note that the program will be run without user interaction. Although it may display progress information, it is better if the application has no user interface.

Parameters: Enter parameters that will be passed to the external program when it is launched. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements, data selections, or any combination of these. By default, this property is set to "%F", so the file received by the task is fed to the application as its source data. Note that quotation marks must be used before and after each parameter and that blanks must separate multiple parameters ("%F" "NoUI", for example). Bear in mind that it is the external program that determines which parameters are accepted.

Start in: Enter the folder in which the external program is to run. This is important, for example, if the program is to generate files that are to be picked up in a specific location for further processing, or if it requires resources that are located in a specific folder. Leave blank to run the program in the folder of the executable file.

Run minimized: Select to prevent a window (a DOS box, for instance) from being displayed on the desktop. When selected, the program runs in a background window.
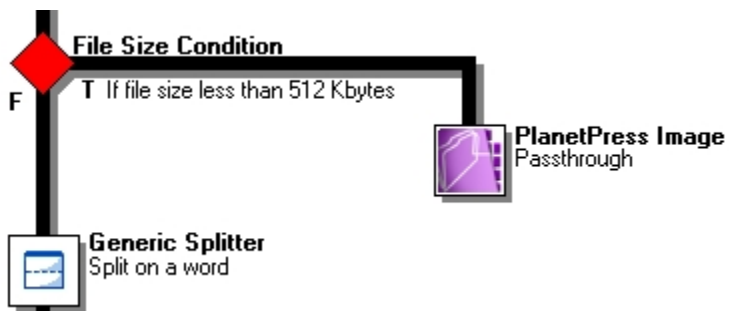
Related topics:

- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)
- Emulated Data Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 182)
- XML Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 184)
- Database Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 186)
- In-Stream Splitter Action Task Properties (Page 178)

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

10.1.33 Loop Action Task Properties

Loop action tasks are used to repeat those tasks that are located after it on a given process branch. The number of repeats can be fixed or variable, as required.

Loop action task properties are as follows:

General tab

Number of iterations: Enter the number of times you want the following tasks on the branch to be repeated. In this variable property box, you may enter static characters, variables, job information elements, data selections, or any combination of these.

Store current iteration in Job Info #: Use this box only if you need to use the current loop iteration number for a specific reason (to use in a file name, for example). Enter the number of the Job Info number you want to use for that purpose.

Data stream group

Use original data stream every time: Select to reuse the original job file received by the Loop action task at every iteration. If this option is not selected and if the process ends with Printer Queue output task, for example, the second time the Loop action task will be performed, it will use the PostScript file generated by the output task.

Related topics:

10.1.34 Open XSLT Action Task Properties

Open XSLT action tasks execute XSLT code to rearrange the information present in the XML file it receives.

Open XSLT action task properties are as follows:

General tab

XSLT Versions group

XSLT 1.0: Select if you will be entering or pasting XSLT version 1.0 code.

XSLT 2.0: Select if you will be entering or pasting XSLT version 2.0 code.

XSLT Code: Enter or paste XSLT code in this box.

Open Editor: Click to open the XSLT Editor for enhanced features (see Use the Editor).

Related topics:

- Load External File Action Task Properties
- Loop Action Task Properties (Page 209)
- PrintForm Action Task Properties (Page 164)
- PrintShop Mail Action Task Properties (Page 165)
- Rename Action Task Property (Page 166)
- Run Script Action Task Properties (Page 167)
- Search and Replace Action Task Properties
- Advanced Search and Replace Action Task Properties (Page 159)
- Send Images to Printer Action Task Properties (Page 169)
- Send to Folder Action Task Properties (Page 170)
- Standard Filter Action Task Properties (Page 172)
- Set Job Infos and Variables Action Task Properties (Page 171)
- Translator Action Task Properties (Page 173)
- Windows Print Converter Action Task Properties (Page 174)

11 Using Conditions

In the Process area, conditional branches appear with their associated condition, allowing you to understand the logic of the whole process at a glance.

File Size Condition

F

T If file size less than 512 Kbytes

PlanetPress Image
Passthrough

Generic Splitter
Split on a word

A) Branch condition.

11.1 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on the properties of the available conditions. It contains the following topics:

11.1.1 File Size Condition Properties

File Size conditions test the size of the job file they receive. Note that the job file may include data selections, attachments and documents that were added by other tasks.

File Size Condition properties are as follows:

General tab

File size is: Select whether the condition is to check if the job file is smaller (less than) or larger (more than) then the specified value.

Kbytes: Enter the minimum (more than) or maximum (less than) size setting in kilobytes.

Invert condition result: Select to toggle the result of the condition (true becomes false and vice versa).

11.1.2 File Name Condition Properties

File Name conditions test the original name of the job file travelling down the process branch, or in other words, the name of the file received by the last input task appearing above the condition.

File Name Condition properties are as follows:

General tab

File name mask: Enter a file name. The condition will be tested True only in the case of an exact match, so consider using wildcard characters.

Invert condition result: Select to toggle the result of the condition (true becomes false and vice versa).

Related topics:

11.2 SNMP Condition Properties

SNMP conditions test the state of printers as well as other SNMP compliant devices. This includes:

- The basic status of a printer (idle, offline, out of paper, etc.).
- The extended status of a printer or the status of any SNMP compliant device. A color laser printer with a management information base (MIB) that includes object identifiers (OIDs) that point to individual toner cartridges, for example, can let you test the status of each cartridge separately. An SNMP compliant modem may also be tested to see if it is ready to send faxes or data, for example.

11.2.1 Management Information Base Object Identifiers

A Management Information Base (MIB) is a database of Object Identifiers (OIDs) that can be used to monitor device objects using SNMP. An MIB OID can point be a printer tray, cartridge or hard disk, or to modem mode. Using an SNMP condition, PlanetPress Watch/Server can communicate with a device located at a given IP address and request the status of the object identified by a given MIB OID number. Object Identifiers are typically assigned and registered by device manufacturers. They are based on a standard known as Abstract Syntax Notation One (often referred to as the ASN.1 standard).

SNMP Condition properties are as follows:

General tab

Parameters group

Community: Enter the community name for the printer or other SNMP compliant device. The community name tells the device which rights to grant PlanetPress Watch/Server (required to perform the test). Most SNMP devices come with a public community name that usually grants read-only and/or read-write access. Consult either SNMP documentation or the device's own documentation for further information.

IP address: Enter the IP address of the device.

Get info: Click to test the IP address.

Host name: When you click Get info, if PlanetPress Watch/Server is able to communicate with the device, it displays its name here.

Description: When you click Get info, if PlanetPress Watch/Server is able to communicate with the device, it displays its description here.

Condition type: Select Printer Queue to test a standard printer status condition or User Defined to test a status identified using a printer specific identification code. Bear in mind that the failure to comply with any of the test conditions selected below will make the whole condition False.

Printer Queue group

The following options are displayed when Printer Queue is selected in the Condition Type box.

Printer status: Select Idle or Printing to test whether the printer is currently idle or printing. Select Do not test if you only want to test the printer's alert status (below).

Alert status: Select No alert to make the condition False whenever an alert situation is detected, regardless of its type or severity. Select No critical alert to make the condition False whenever a critical alert is detected, regardless of its type. Select Non-critical alert to choose a specific non-critical alert in the Detected error box. Select Critical alert to choose a specific critical alert in the Detected error box. Select Do not test if you only want to test the printer status (above).

Detected error: Select a specific non-critical or critical alert. Note that this box is only displayed if you selected either Non-critical alert or Critical alert in the Alert Status box.

User Defined

The following options are displayed when User Defined is selected in the Condition Type box.

MIB OID number: Enter the Management Information Base Object Identifier corresponding to the object you want to test. Vendors of SNMP compliant devices sometimes list MIB OIDs in their documentation.

Test: Click to test communication with the device and the MIB OID number.

Operator: Select the operator used to test the condition.

Value: Enter a specific object status. Vendors of SNMP compliant devices sometimes list possible object states in their documentation.

Invert condition result: Select to toggle the result of the whole SNMP condition (true becomes false and vice versa).

Related topics:

- File Size Condition Properties (Page 213)
- File Name Condition Properties (Page 213)
- Text Condition Properties (Page 217)
- Time of Day Condition (Page 220)

11.3 Text Condition Properties

Text conditions can be used to perform two different types of tests:

- *To test the presence of a string within the job file*. You can, for example, search for the string "Gold member" on the first line of the job file. As another example, you could search for a variable string retrieved via a job info variable or a data selection in a given location in the job file.
- *To compare two strings*. As with the test above, this test can also be used to search for a string in a given location. The difference with this test is that it gives you comparison options. Using the "Contains" operator, you can test the presence of the string "Gold member" at a given location in the job file (using a data selection), but the other operators can be used to test whether or not the first string is equal to the second one, whether it is equal or lower than the second one, etc.

The logic of text conditions can sometimes be tricky, especially if it includes variable strings, so you should test it thoroughly.

Text Condition properties are as follows:

General tab

String: If you want to test the presence of a given string at a given location, enter the string in this box. If you want to compare two strings or perform a numeric comparison, enter the first string in this box. Note that you can enter either a static string, a variable or a data selection in this box. If you enter a variable, PlanetPress Watch/Server will retrieve the string from the variable before performing the comparison. If you enter a data selection, PlanetPress Watch/Server will search the job file and retrieve the string found at the referenced location before performing the comparison.

Operator: Select the desired operator. Note that neither the "Is found" nor the "Is not found" operator can be used to test XML data.

Convert data to uppercase before comparison: This option is only displayed when either "Is found" or "Is not found" is selected in the Operator box. Select to prompt PlanetPress Watch/Server to convert the string to uppercase before performing the comparison.

Numeric comparison: This option is *not* displayed when either "Is found" or "Is not found" is selected in the Operator box. Select to convert the strings from the String and Comparison string boxes to their corresponding numeric values before performing the comparison. If you chose an operator that compares numeric values, you should select this option.

On numeric error: This option is only available when the Numeric comparison option is selected. Select the behavior you prefer when PlanetPress Watch/Server is unable to successfully perform a numeric comparison. Select "Return the error", if you want the Text condition to fail altogether. Select "Return true", if you want the condition to be considered True. Select "Return false", if you want the condition to be considered False.

Location: You can only enter a location when either "Is found" or "Is not found" is selected in the Operator box. If you select "at", you also have to enter a specific line and column. If you select "on line", you have to enter a given line. If you select "in area", you have to enter a range of lines and columns. If you select "on the page", the search area will cover the whole data page (as defined below).

Compare to string: You *cannot* enter a comparison string when either "Is found" or "Is not found" is selected in the Operator box. Enter the second string of the comparison in this box. As with the String box, you can enter a static string, a variable or a data selection in this box.

Page range: Select Any page if you do not want to specify a precise data page. Select Pages to specify individual pages or page ranges. The page range setting is only considered when either "Is found" or "Is not found" is selected in the Operator box.

Range: Entries must be separated by commas. Page ranges are entered using a starting page and an ending page, separated by a dash. For pages 1, 3 and 5 to 7, you would enter the following: 1,3,5-7.

Invert condition result: Select to toggle the result of the condition (true becomes false and vice versa).

Related topics:

11.4 Time of Day Condition

Time of Day conditions test the current time and day. Using a time and day grid, you can select blocks that correspond to time and day coordinates. Various settings can be used to change time intervals, for instance, that range from 15 minutes to 24 hours. You may choose to use days or dates, and you may also select specific weeks or months.

You can, for example, choose a single block that corresponds to a time period starting at 6:00 AM and ending at 6:15 AM on the first of each month, or you could choose a single block that corresponds to a period that starts at noon and that ends at midnight on every Sunday of every week.

You can choose contiguous as well as separate time blocks as required. The condition is tested True every time the current time and date corresponds to a selected time block.

Text Condition properties are as follows:

General tab

Month: Select "All months" if you want the selected time blocks to be valid every month of the year. Select a specific month if you want the selected time blocks to be valid only on that month.

Week of month / by date: Select "Date" if you want the selected time blocks to be valid only on specific dates. Select "All weeks" if you want the selected time blocks to be valid every week of the month. Select a specific week of the month if you want the selected time blocks to be valid only on that week (the first, second or last week of the month, for instance).

Time division: Select the desired time interval. Each block in the grid corresponds to the selected time interval.

Invert condition result: Select to toggle the result of the condition (true becomes false and vice versa).

Grid: Select separate or contiguous time blocks. Click a block to toggle it on or off. Click and drag to toggle multiple blocks on or off. Click date or day at the top of the grid to toggle the whole date or day on or off. Click a time interval on the left margin of the grid to toggle the whole time interval on or off.

Select All: Click to toggle all the time blocks on.

Clear: Click to toggle all the time blocks off.

Related topics:

- File Size Condition Properties (Page 213)
- File Name Condition Properties (Page 213)
- SNMP Condition Properties (Page 214)
- Text Condition Properties (Page 217)

12 Using Scripts

Scripts can be used to perform various operations, such as to manipulate data, for example. PlanetPress Watch/Server can perform scripts written in six different scripting languages and also provides an interface for editing scripts.

In this section, you learn to:

- Use the Editor (Page 222)
- Import and Export Scripts (Page 222)
- Find Strings in a Script (Page 223)
- Find and Replace Strings in a Script (Page 224)
- Go to a Line in a Script (Page 225)
- Change the Editor Language (Page 225)
- Toggle Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Jump to Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Use Functions created for PlanetPress Watch/Server in Scripts (Page 227)

12.1 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on various questions concerning scripts. It contains the following topics:

12.1.1 Use the Editor

The Script Editor and XSLT Editor share most of the same commands and functions. You can open the Script Editor using the **Open Editor** button both from the **Run Script Properties** dialog box and from the **Open XSLT Properties** dialog box. When you do so, the script currently displayed in the dialog box is pasted to the editor's scripting box.

For information on the available editor options, refer to .

Related topics:

12.1.2 Import and Export Scripts

Both the Script Editor and XSLT Editor let you import and export scripts. Note that when you import a script, it replaces any script currently displayed in the editor.

To import a script:

1. In the editor, choose **File** | **Import**.
   The **Open** dialog box appears.
2. To import a script that uses a different scripting language or that was saved under a different file format, make a selection in the **Files of type** drop-down list.
3. Navigate to the script you want to import and select it.
4. Click **OK**.
   The script is imported, displayed and formatted according to the syntax of the language selected in the editor. If the imported file had the extension of a recognized scripting language (**.vbs** or **.js**, for example), the editor language is automatically changed.

To export a script:

1. In the editor, choose **File** | **Export**.
   The **Save As** dialog box appears.

2. To save the script using a different scripting language or under a different file format, make a selection in the **Save as type** drop-down list.
3. Navigate to the location where you want to save the exported script.
4. Enter the name of the script in the **File name** box.
5. To save the script using a different scripting language or under a different file format, make a selection in the **Save as type** drop-down list.
6. Click **OK**.

Related topics:

12.1.3 Find Strings in a Script

The **Find Text** dialog box allows you to search for text strings in the editor. The available options help you limit the search, making searches quicker and easier.

To find strings in a script:

Note that if you only want to search a particular section of the script, you should select it before performing the following procedure.

1. Choose **Search** | **Find**, or press **CTRL**+**F**.
   The **Find Text** dialog box appears. The last used string is displayed in the **Text to find** drop-down list box.
2. Set the search settings and options.
   Text to find: Enter a new search string or select a previous search from the drop-down list.
   Case sensitive: Select to limit the search to instances of text with the same case as the text in the Text to find box.
   Whole words only: Select to limit the search to complete words matching the text in the Text to find box. Whole words are defined as strings that have a space or punctuation before and after the word.
   Regular expressions: Select to treat the regular expressions of the scripting language as text to search. If you clear this option, the regular expressions of the language are not included in the search.
   Global: Select to search the entire content of the script.
   Selected text: Select to find matching text within the text block you select. A portion of text must be selected before you run the search.
   Forward: Select to search the script forward, from the location of the cursor or from the beginning of the script, depending on what you choose as the origin (From cursor begins where the cursor is currently located in the script, Entire scope begins from the beginning of the script or beginning of script selection). If you limit the scope to selected text, you move forward only within the selection. When the search reaches the end of the script or script selection, the search finishes. It does not loop back to the beginning.
   Backward: Select to search the script backward, from the location of the cursor or from the end of the script, depending on what you choose for the origin (From cursor begins where the cursor is currently located in the script, Entire scope begins from the beginning of the script or beginning of script selection). If you limit the scope to selected text, you move backward only within the script selection. When the search reaches the beginning of the script or script selection, the search finishes. It does not loop back to the beginning.
   From cursor: Select to start the search from the position of the cursor.
   Entire scope: Select to search the entire script or a script selection. The scope croplands to a script selection if you make a selection before executing the Find.
3. Click **OK**.

The first matching string is highlighted in the script.
4. To find the next matching string, choose **Search | Find Again** or pressing **F3**.

Related topics:

- Use the Editor (Page 222)
- Import and Export Scripts (Page 222)
- Find and Replace Strings in a Script (Page 224)
- Go to a Line in a Script (Page 225)
- Change the Editor Language (Page 225)
- Toggle Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Jump to Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Use Functions created for PlanetPress Watch/Server in Scripts (Page 227)

12.1.4 Find and Replace Strings in a Script

The **Replace With** dialog box lets you search for and replace text strings in the editor. The available options help you limit the search, making replacements quicker and easier.

To find and replace strings in a script:

1. Choose **Search | Replace**, or press **CTRL+R**.
   The **Replace With** dialog box appears. The last used strings are displayed in the **Text to find** and **Replace with** boxes.
2. Set the replacement settings and options.
   Text to find: Enter a new search string or select a previous search from the drop-down list.
   Replace with: Enter the string that will replace the string displayed in the **Text to find** box.
   Case sensitive: Select to limit the search to instances of text with the same case as the text in the Text to find box.
   Whole words only: Select to limit the search to complete words that match the text in the Text to find box. Whole words are defined as strings that have a space or punctuation before and after the word.
   Regular expressions: Select to treat the regular expressions of the scripting language as text. If you clear this option, the regular expressions of the language are blocked from the search.
   Prompt on replace: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server display a prompt before it replaces text. When you use the Replace All function, you are prompted each time matching text is found. The prompt includes an All button for replacing all matching text. This suppresses any further prompting.
   Global: Select to search the entire content of the script.
   Selected text: Select to find matching text only within a text block you select. The text must be selected before you run the search.
   Forward: Select to search the script forward, from the location of the cursor or from the beginning of the script, depending on what you choose as the origin (From cursor begins where the cursor is currently located in the script, Entire scope begins from the beginning of the script or beginning of script selection). If you limit the scope to selected text, you move forward only within the selection. When the search reaches the end of the script or script selection, the search finishes. It does not loop back to the beginning.
   Backward: Select to search the script backward, from the location of the cursor or from the end of the script, depending on what you choose for the origin (From cursor begins where the cursor is currently located in the script, Entire scope begins from the beginning of the script or beginning of script selection). If you limit the scope to selected text, you move backward only within the script selection. When the search reaches the beginning of the script or script selection, the search finishes. It does not loop back to the beginning.
   From cursor: Select to start the search from the position of the cursor.
   Entire scope: Select to search either the entire script, or a script selection. The scope corresponds to a script selection if you make a selection before executing the Find.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Click **OK** to replace the first string encountered. If you selected **Prompt on replace**, a dialog box opens to ask you whether to proceed with the replacement. You can **OK** to replace the first string only, or you can click **All** to replace that string as well as every other string that matches the replacement settings.

- Click **Replace All** to replace all the strings that match the replacement settings.

4. To find and replace the next matching string, choose **Search** | **Find Again** or pressing **F3**. Once again, if you selected **Prompt on replace**, a dialog box opens to ask you whether to proceed with the replacement. You can **OK** to replace that string only, or you can click **All** to replace that string as well as every other string that matches the replacement settings.

Related topics:

- Use the Editor (Page 222)
- Import and Export Scripts (Page 222)
- Find Strings in a Script (Page 223)
- Go to a Line in a Script (Page 225)
- Change the Editor Language (Page 225)
- Toggle Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Jump to Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Use Functions created for PlanetPress Watch/Server in Scripts (Page 227)

12.1.5 Go to a Line in a Script

The **Go To Line** dialog box lets you jump to a specific line within your script. It works whether or not the line number are displayed on the left side of the editor window (to know how to toggle the line number display settings, see Editor Options (Page 258)).

To go to a line in a script:

1. Click anywhere in the Script Editor, then choose **Search** | **Go To Line**, or press **Alt**+**G**.
   The **Go To Line** dialog box appears. The last used line numbers are displayed in the **Enter new line number** drop-down list box.
2. Enter a new line number in the **Enter new line number** box or select one from drop-down list.
3. Click **OK**.

Related topics:

- Use the Editor (Page 222)
- Import and Export Scripts (Page 222)
- Find Strings in a Script (Page 223)
- Find and Replace Strings in a Script (Page 224)
- Change the Editor Language (Page 225)
- Toggle Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Jump to Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Use Functions created for PlanetPress Watch/Server in Scripts (Page 227)

12.1.6 Change the Editor Language

You typically need to change the editor's scripting language when you write scripts from scratch. Changing the editor language changes script formatting and highlighting in the editor itself, but it also changes how the script will be interpreted and exported.

To change the editor language:

- In the Script Editor, choose **Language**, then choose the correct editor language. Note that only those languages that are locally available are enabled (other are greyed out).

Related topics:

- Use the Editor (Page 222)
- Import and Export Scripts (Page 222)
- Find Strings in a Script (Page 223)

- Find and Replace Strings in a Script (Page 224)
- Go to a Line in a Script (Page 225)
- Toggle Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Jump to Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Use Functions created for PlanetPress Watch/Server in Scripts (Page 227)

12.1.7 Toggle Bookmarks

Bookmarks help you identify and jump to specific places within your script (see Jump to Bookmarks (Page 226)).

Bookmarks are displayed in the editor's gutter, so you will not be able to see them unless the gutter is both visible and sufficiently wide. If line numbers are also displayed in the gutter, bookmarks may be harder to see. To control line number and gutter display, see Editor Options (Page 258).

Note that bookmarks are not preserved when you close the editor.

To toggle bookmarks:

- Place the cursor on a line in your script and, from the editor's pop-up menu, choose **Toggle Bookmark** and a given bookmark number.

If the bookmark you selected was not displayed on any line, it is added to the line where you placed the cursor. If the bookmark you selected was displayed on the line where you placed the cursor, it is removed. If the bookmark you selected was displayed on a different line, it is moved to the line where you placed the cursor.

Related topics:

- Use the Editor (Page 222)
- Import and Export Scripts (Page 222)
- Find Strings in a Script (Page 223)
- Find and Replace Strings in a Script (Page 224)
- Go to a Line in a Script (Page 225)
- Change the Editor Language (Page 225)
- Jump to Bookmarks (Page 226)
- Use Functions created for PlanetPress Watch/Server in Scripts (Page 227)

12.1.8 Jump to Bookmarks

Before you can jump to bookmarks, you must add bookmarks to specific lines in your script (see Toggle Bookmarks (Page 226)).

To jump to a bookmark:

- From the editor's pop-up menu, choose **Go To Bookmark** and a given bookmark number.

If the bookmark you selected was displayed on a line, the cursor jumps to that line.

Related topics:

- Use the Editor (Page 222)
- Import and Export Scripts (Page 222)
- Find Strings in a Script (Page 223)
- Find and Replace Strings in a Script (Page 224)
- Go to a Line in a Script (Page 225)
- Change the Editor Language (Page 225)
- Toggle Bookmarks (Page 226)

- Use Functions created for PlanetPress Watch/Server in Scripts (Page 227)

12.1.9 Use Functions created for PlanetPress Watch in Scripts

You can integrate functions that were created especially for PlanetPress Watch/Server directly into your own scripts. For example, you can add the **PW_GetJobFileName** function in your script to access a data file currently running in a process, and let your script manipulate the data.

The examples included in this section are given in VBScript (Microsoft® Visual Basic® Scripting Edition). VBScript is a subset of the Microsoft® Visual Basic® programming language that can be interpreted by Web browsers, by Microsoft® ActiveX® Controls, by Automation servers, and by Java applets. When you use these functions in scripts written in other languages in the editor, you must use your language's own syntax.

The following functions are available:

PW_ShowMessage: Displays a message in a dialog box (see PW_ShowMessage.

PW_GetJobFileName: Returns the job filename, which is the data file currently being processed (see PW_GetJobFileName).

PW_GetOriginalFileName: Returns the original name the file had when it was captured by PlanetPress Watch (see PW_GetOriginalFileName).

PW_InputBox: Displays an input window to allow the user to enter a value (see PW_InputBox).

12.2 PDF Scripting Tools API

- AlambicEdit Library Reference

12.3 SOAP Server API Reference

PlanetPress Suite offers a SOAP server API Reference allowing jobs to be submitted from third party application using the SOAP protocol. Remember that SOAP stands for *Simple Object Access Protocol*.

While there are multiple possibilities for solutions using a SOAP server implementation, the SOAP Server API Reference is specifically for submitting jobs from a SOAP client. It implements five methods that will allow SOAP clients to submit jobs and get information from the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool executing them. Note that PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools already come with a SOAP client plugin, which can be used as an input, action or output; this task was renamed SOAP Legacy Client.

Since the SOAP Server API Reference is primarily targeted at programmers or systems engineers, it is rather technical.

Related topics:

12.3.1 SOAP API - SubmitJob

Syntax

`SubmitJob (File, SubmitJobInfStruc , ReturnJobFile, Username, Password) : SubmitJobResult`

Description

The SubmitJob method allows users to remotely submit files to their PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool from a SOAP client. The SOAP client has the option to wait for a response file from the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools SOAP server.

Arguments

- **File** – base64Binary. This is an array of byte base64 encoded (see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Base64).
- **SubmitJobInfStruc** – Structure containing any required information to prepare the file for a valid insertion into a PlanetPress Suite process.
- **ReturnJobFile** – Boolean value. When true, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools SOAP server returns the job file. When false, there no file is returned to the SOAP client. (For example: when submitting a job for print, there is no need to return a file)
- **Username** – String containing the username.
- **Password** – String containing the password. This value is case sensitive.

Return Value

- **SubmitJobResult** - Structure containing the following information:
- **Success** – Integer indicating the Success/Error level of the operation. A result of 0 means the operation was successful.
- **Message** – String containing text information about the Success/Failure status.
- **SubmitJobInfStruc** – See point **SubmitJobInfStruc** for details.
- **ResultFile** – base64Binary. If Success is different than 0 or the **ReturnJobFile** was set to False in the initial call, no file is returned. Otherwise, **ResultFile** contains the job file, as it existed at the completion

of the PlanetPress Suite process (for instance, if the process creates a PDF and sets it as the current job file, the PDF is the file that gets returned to the calling SOAP client).

Notes

- The **SubmitJob** method only returns a file if the PlanetPress Suite process contains a SOAP Input task.
- If **ReturnJobFile** is set to true, the schedule options of the process should be set to a pooling lower than four seconds, so the client application gets a timely response.
- To return the file, the process must be completed before the timeout of the server occurs. The **Timeout** option can be set in your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool preferences.

12.3.2 SOAP API - PostJob

Syntax

```
PostJob (File, PostJobInfStruc , Username, Password) : PostJobResult
```

Description

The PostJob method allows users to remotely submit files to PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools by using the **Resubmit from here** feature. The main advantage of this feature is that it allows a user to specify a starting task index from which the **File** is to be processed.

Parameters

- **File** – base64Binary. This is an array of byte base64 encoded (see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Base64).
- **PostJobInfStruc** – Structure containing any required information to prepare the file for resubmission into a PlanetPress Suite process.
- **Username** – String containing the username.
- **Password** – String containing the password. This value is case sensitive.

Return Value

- **PostjobResult** - Structure containing the following information:
- **Success** – Integer indicating the Success/Error level of the operation. A result of 0 means that the operation was successful.
- **Message** – String containing text information about the Success status.
- **PostjobInfStruc** – See point **PostJobInfoStruct** for details.

Notes

- The task index can be retrieved by using the **GetProcessTaskList** method. See point GetProcessTaskList for details.
- The **PostJob** method can never return a file to the calling application.

12.3.3 SOAP API - GetProcessList

Syntax

```
GetProcessList (Username, Password) : GetProcessListResult
```

Description

The GetProcessList function allows SOAP clients to request the list of available PlanetPress Suite processes,

based on their authentication credentials.

Parameters

- **Username** – String containing the username.
- **Password** – String containing the password. This value is case sensitive.

Return Value

- **GetProcessListResult** - Structure containing the following information:
- **Success** – Integer indicating the system-defined Success/Error level of the operation. A result of 0 means that the operation was successful.
- **Message** – String containing text information about the Success status.
- **ProcessList** – Structure containing the following information details.
- **ProcessName** – String containing the process name
- **Active** – Boolean value specifying whether the process is currently active.

Notes

- To obtain access to the complete list of processes for all users, the end-user must have administrator privileges.

12.3.4 SOAP API - GetProcessTaskList

Syntax

```
GetProcessTaskList (ProcessName, Username, Password) : GetProcessTaskListResult
```

Description

The GetProcessTaskList function will allow a user to remotely request the tasks list of a process. This will be useful with the **PostJob** API since it needs a **TaskIndex**.

Parameters

- **ProcessName** – The Name of the PlanetPress Suite process.
- **Username** – String containing the username.
- **Password** – String containing the password. This is case sensitive.

Return Value

- **GetProcessTaskListResult** – Structure containing the following information:
- **Success** – Integer indicating the system-defined Success/Error level of the operation. A result of 0 means that the operation was successful.
- **Message** – String containing text information about the Success status.
- **TaskNames–** Structure containing the following information details.
- **TaskName** – String containing the name of the task
- **TaskIndex** – Integer : 1 based index of the task.
- **TaskDepth** – Integer : 1 based depth of the task.

Notes

- The **TaskNames** array will be sorted by the execution order of the process with the primary input of the process having an index of 1.

12.3.5 SOAP API - GetSOAPProcessList

Syntax

```
GetSOAPProcessList (Username, Password) : GetSOAPProcessListResult
```

Description

The GetSOAPProcessList function will allow users to request the list of PlanetPress Suite processes that contain a SOAP Input plug-in with the SOAP action name. This is useful when working with the **SubmitJob** API since it requires a **SOAPActionName**.

Parameters

- **Username** – String containing the username.
- **Password** – String containing the password. This is case sensitive.

Return Value

- **GetSOAPProcessListResult** – Structure containing the following information:
- **Success** – Integer indicating the system-defined Success/Error level of the operation. A result of 0 means that the operation was successful.
- **Message** – String containing text information about the Success status.
- **ProcessList** – Structure containing the following information details.
- **SOAPActionName** – String containing the name of the process as seen in your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool.
- **Active** – Boolean value indicating if the process is active in your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool.

Notes

- If a user has administrator privilege, he will have access to all processes and therefore he will see all the processes.

12.3.6 SOAP API - PostJobInfoStruc

PostJobInfStruc

Structure containing any required information to prepare the file for resubmission into a PlanetPress Suite process.

- **VariableList** – Array of complex type, containing pairs of variable names and variables value. The list also contains the **JobInfo** variables.
  - **VariableName** – String
  - **VariableValue** – String
- **ProcessName** – String - Name of the PlanetPress Suite process.
- **TaskIndex** – Integer - 1 based index of the task where the resubmission should start.
- **FirstPage** – Integer - First page of data to process.
- **LastPage** – Integer - Last page of data to process.

Note: If both **FirstPage** and **LastPage** are set to 0, the entire data file is used.

12.3.7 SOAP API - SubmitJobInfStruc

SubmitJobInfStruc

Structure containing any required information to prepare the file for a valid insertion into a PlanetPress Suite process.

- **VariableList** – Array of complex type, containing pairs of variable name and variable value. The list also contains the **JobInfo** variables
  - ▪ **VariableName** – String
  - ▪ **VariableValue** – String
- **OAPActionName** – String containing the name of the SOAP input task's action name.

12.4 Using Dot Notation

Which Dot Notation methods can I use in the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools?

The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools scripting supports the use of dot notation when calling an object and one of its methods. The PlanetPress Workflow Tools automation object has the following methods:

See "Watch.ShowMessage" (Page 234)	See "Watch.GetJobFileName" (Page 234)
See "Watch.GetOriginalFileName" (Page 234)	See "Watch.InputBox" (Page 235)
See "Watch.GetJobInfo" (Page 235)	See "Watch.SetJobInfo" (Page 235)
See "Watch.GetVariable" (Page 236)	See "Watch.SetVariable" (Page 236)
See "Watch.ExpandString" (Page 236)	See "Watch.Log" (Page 237)
See "Watch.GetMetaDataFilename" (Page 235)	

12.4.1 Watch.ShowMessage

Displays a message to the user. This method is the same as PW_ShowMessage. Use this method to show the current message displayed whether or not a user is logged in. In the following example, **showmessage()** displays a dialog box saying "test message".

Example

Watch.ShowMessage("test message")

12.4.2 Watch.GetJobFileName

Returns the complete path and file name of the job. This method is the same as PW_GetJobFileName. **getjobfilename()** obtains the file name of a PlanetPress Suite process.

Example

s = watch.getjobfilename

watch.showmessage(s)

12.4.3 Watch.GetOriginalFileName

Returns the original name of the file, when it was captured. This method is the same as PW_GetOriginalFileName.

Example

s = watch.getoriginalfilename

watch.showmessage(s)

12.4.4 Watch.GetMetaDataFilename

Returns the complete path and file name of the metadata file associated with the current job file.

Example

```
s = Watch.GetMetaDataFilename

Watch.ShowMessage(s)
```

12.4.5 Watch.InputBox

Prompts the user to enter a string. The string is displayed as the window caption. You can specify a message that is displayed above the text box. This method is the same as PW_InputBox.

Clicking OK returns the value entered by the user. If no value was entered the default value is returned. Clicking Cancel returns the default value.

You must enable the "Run on desktop" option for the PlanetPress Suite process whose script calls Watch.InputBox. Otherwise the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool application may stop working and require a reboot.

Example

s = watch.inputbox("caption", "message", "default")

watch.showmessage(s)

12.4.6 Watch.GetJobInfo

Returns job information corresponding to the specified index. Index is an integer from 1 to 9.

Syntax

Watch.GetJobInfo(Index: integer): string

Example

s = watch.getjobinfo(3)

watch.showmessage(s)

12.4.7 Watch.SetJobInfo

Sets the job information index to a specified string value.

Syntax

Watch.SetJobInfo(Index: Integer; Value: String)

Example

watch.setjobinfo 3, "new value"

12.4.8 Watch.GetVariable

Returns the string value of the corresponding variable name. Note that if an undeclared variable is called using this method, an error will be generated.

Syntax

Watch.GetVariable(Name: String): String

Examples

s = watch.GetVariable("MyLocalVariable")

s = watch.GetVariable("global.MyGlobalVariable")

12.4.9 Watch.SetVariable

Sets the variable to a specified string value. Note that if an undeclared variable is called using this method, an error will be generated.

Syntax

Watch.SetVariable Name: String; Value: String

Examples

watch.setvariable "MyLocalVariable", "new value"

watch.setvariable "global.MyGlobalVariable", "new value"

12.4.10 Watch.ExpandString

Provides access to the emulated job file and to all variables. This function returns a string that is the expanded version of the input string.

Syntax

Watch.ExpandString(StringToExpand) -> string

Arguments

StringToExpand—A regular parseable string that may contain system variables (%u, %f), user variables (%1 to %9), octal codes, and data selections.

Example

This example results in expanding the string of variables to "2005-02-17<cr><lf>" where <cr><lf> is a carriage return followed by a line feed.

str = Watch.ExpandString("%y-%m-%d\n")

12.4.11 Watch.Log

Creates messages that are added to the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools *watch.log* file. The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools *watch.log* file is located in *...\Program Files\PlanetPress Suite 7\PlanetPress Watch\Log\ppw[log date].log*.

View error messages in the Services Console while PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools is in Run mode by choosing **Tools | Services | Service Console**. In the Service Console, error messages appear with colors that correspond to the message level.

Level	Type	Text Color in Service Console
1	Error	Red
2	Warning	Orange
3	Information	Black
4	Debug	Grey

Syntax

Watch.Log("Message", Level)

Arguments

Message—A string representing the message that is logged in the log file. Note that the text of the message must use the locale encoding of the system where the PlanetPress Suite software will be running, otherwise it will be unreadable.

Level—An integer between 1 and 4, specifying the severity level of the error message. Set message levels as follows:

Level	Description
1	The message is logged as an Error in the log file.
2	The message is logged as a Warning in the log file.
3	The message is logged as Information in the log file.
4	The message only appears when the application runs in Debug mode.

Example

Watch.Log "The current job file is " & Watch.GetJobFileName, 3

Related topics:

- Using and Editing Scripts (Page 0)
- The Script Editor and XSLT Editor (Page 0)

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

13 Printer Queues and Documents

This section delves into the subjects of PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queues and PlanetPress Design documents.

This section contains detailed information on:

13.1 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on various questions concerning printing. It contains the following topics:

13.1.1 LPR Output Printer Queue Properties

LPR output printer queues send print jobs to LPD-compatible printers using the LPD/LPR protocol. Note that most of the settings associated with LPR output are configured via the PlanetPress Watch/Server user options (see LPR Output User Options (Page 262)).

LPR output printer queue properties are as follows:

General tab

Printer address: Enter the IP address or host name of the printer receiving LPR jobs.

Queue name: Enter the printer queue name. Based on printer and network requirements, this property may not be required.

Note that if you plan to use an LPR output printer queue to send PlanetPress Design documents generated using the Optimized PostScript Stream option, you should not enter data selections in the **Printer address** and **Queue name** variable property boxes (seeVariable Properties). If you do need to use information stored in the data to configure the LPR output printer queue, you should first use Job info variables (see Job Information Elements and Job Info Variables) to store the information, and then use these variables in the **Printer address** and **Queue name** variable property boxes.

Data type: Select the proper data type. Select (l) Binary data if the job file is a standard binary file. Select (f) Formatted text to interpret the first character of each line of text as a standard FORTRAN carriage control character. Select (d) DVI file if the job file contains data in the TeX DVI format. Select (o) PostScript file if the job file is a PostScript file. Select (n) Ditroff format if the job file contains data in device independent troff. Select (t) Troff format if the job file contains data in troff. Select (v) Sun raster file if the job file contains raster images. This ensures that the printer uses the correct filter to interpret the data.

Related topics:

- Windows Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 241)
- FTP Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 241)
- Send to Folder Printer Queue Properties (Page 242)
- Printer Queue Advanced Properties (Page 243)
- Add Resident Documents in the Configuration Components Area (Page 245)
- Associate Documents and PlanetPress Watch/Server Printer Queues (Page 245)
- Manually Update Documents (Page 247)
- Print a Test Page (Page 246)

13.1.2 Windows Output Printer Queue Properties

Windows output printer queues send print jobs to local or network printer queues set up in the Windows session in which PlanetPress Watch/Server is running. The corresponding Windows printer driver is used in the printing process.

This type of printer queue does not support the transparency and duotone features, so you should not use it with PlanetPress Design documents that use those features.

Windows output printer queue properties are as follows:

General tab

Printer queue: Select the Windows printer queue to which you want to send print jobs.

Job name: Enter the job's file name. By default, the variable %f (Job File Name) is used. You may use a different variable, but you may not use a data selection. This information may be used for the printer's banner page.

Related topics:

- LPR Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 240)
- FTP Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 241)
- Send to Folder Printer Queue Properties (Page 242)
- Printer Queue Advanced Properties (Page 243)
- Add Resident Documents in the Configuration Components Area (Page 245)
- Associate Documents and PlanetPress Watch/Server Printer Queues (Page 245)
- Manually Update Documents (Page 247)
- Print a Test Page (Page 246)
- Windows Output Printer Queue Properties

13.1.3 FTP Output Printer Queue Properties

Unlike FTP output tasks, which are typically used to send *data files* to FTP sites, FTP output printer queues are mostly used to send *print jobs* to FTP sites.

FTP output printer queue properties are as follows:

General tab

FTP Server: Enter the IP address or host name of the FTP server.

User name: Enter an FTP server user name.

Password: Enter a password associated with the FTP server user name entered above.

Directory: Enter the directory to which the print jobs are to be uploaded. If you leave this box empty, the job files are sent to the root directory of the FTP server.

File name: Enter the name under which the print jobs will be saved. Consider using a dynamic name, since if you use a static name every new file will overwrite the previous one.

Related topics:

- LPR Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 240)
- Windows Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 241)
- Send to Folder Printer Queue Properties (Page 242)
- Printer Queue Advanced Properties (Page 243)
- Add Resident Documents in the Configuration Components Area (Page 245)
- Associate Documents and PlanetPress Watch/Server Printer Queues (Page 245)
- Manually Update Documents (Page 247)
- Print a Test Page (Page 246)

13.1.4 Send to Folder Printer Queue Properties

Unlike Send to Folder output tasks, which are typically used to send *data files* to local or network folders, Send to Folder output printer queues are mostly used to send *print jobs*.

Send to Folder output printer queue properties are as follows:

General tab

Folder: Enter the path of the folder to which the print jobs are to be saved.

File name: Enter the name of the print jobs sent to this queue. To prevent each new file from overwriting the previous one, you should use variable names. This variable property box lets you use a combination of text, variables and data selections.

Concatenate files: If this option is selected, when PlanetPress Watch/Server tries to save the print job under an existing name, it appends the content of the new print job file to that of the existing file, instead of overwriting it.

Separator string: This option is used to add a separator string between the content of each file when the Concatenate files option is selected.

Related topics:

- LPR Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 240)

13.1.5 Printer Queue Advanced Properties

A printer queue's advanced properties includes the printer's speed and any special pre- or post-job commands required for printer specific reasons. Pre-job commands are added right before the data in the data file, while post-job commands are placed at the end of the data file.

The following procedure takes for granted that you are not currently editing a printer queue. If you are in the process of creating or editing a printer queue, simply skip the first step.

Advanced properties for all printer queues are as follows:

Advanced tab

Print speed: Enter the speed, in pages per minute (PPM), of the printer associated with the printer queue. This value is used to determine how to divide jobs when you use the Queue Balancing option for load balancing.

Commands: The list of available commands appears in this box. Select either Pre-job commands or Post-job commands in the Selected box, and double-click a command from this list to add it to the appropriate list.

Selected: Select either Pre-job commands or Post-job commands to add new commands to the appropriate list and to see those commands that have already selected. Double-click a command to remove it from the selected list.

Add: Click to add a new command to the list displayed in the Commands box. You must then edit the new command's description and value. Note that new commands are shared by all printer queues.

Delete: Click to remove a command from the Commands box.

Command description: Use this box to edit the description of the command currently selected in the Commands box.

Command value: Use this box to edit the code of the command currently selected in the Commands box. Use the right-click menu for a list of standard printer control characters.

Related topics:

- Manually Update Documents (Page 247)
- Print a Test Page (Page 246)

13.1.6 Import Documents

This procedure describes how to import variable content documents created in PlanetPress Design. Importing documents can be useful when transferring configurations between PlanetPress Watch/Server installations.

To import documents into PlanetPress Watch/Server:

1. Choose **File | Import Documents**.
   The Import PlanetPress Design Document dialog box appears.
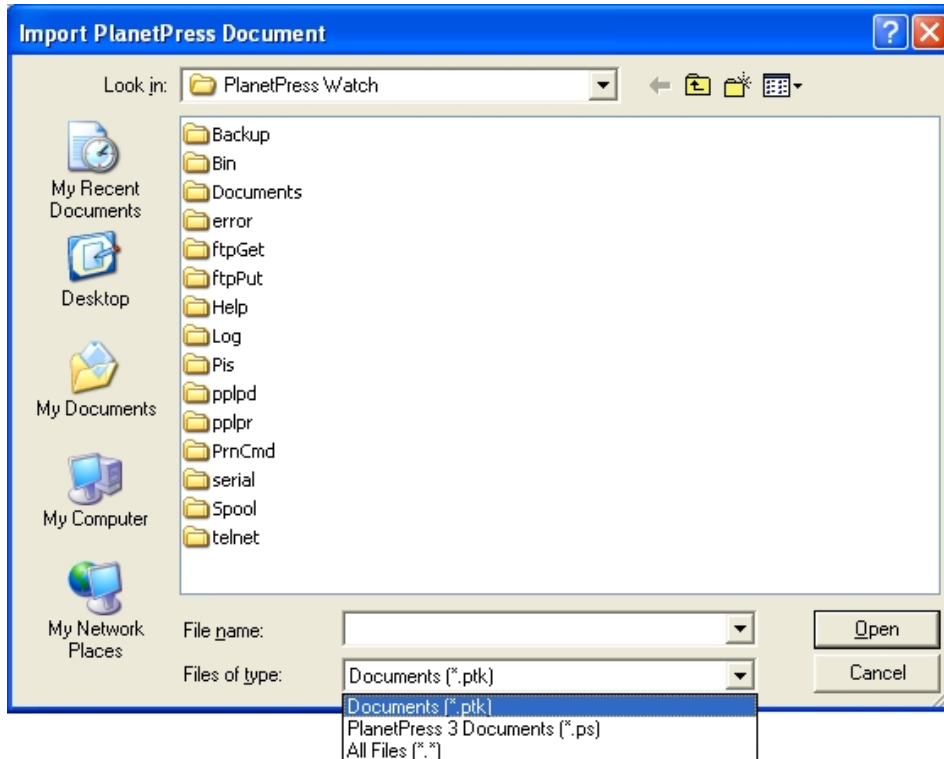
2. In the File type box, select the desired file type.
3. Navigate to the document you want to import, select it and click **Open**.
   The document is imported and displayed in the Configuration Components area. This physically installs the documents to the **Documents** folder relative to the install folder of PlanetPress Watch/Server.

Related topics:

- Import Documents
- Add Resident Documents in the Configuration Components Area (Page 245)

13.1.7 Import PrintShop Mail Documents

This procedure describes how to import variable content documents created in PrintShop Mail. Importing documents can be useful when transferring configurations between PlanetPress Watch/Server installations.

To import documents into PlanetPress Watch/Server:

1. Choose **File | Import PrintShop Mail Documents**.
   The Import PrintShop Mail Document dialog box appears.
2. Navigate to the document you want to import, select it and click **Open**.

The document is imported and displayed in the Configuration Components area. This physically installs the documents to the **Documents** folder relative to the install folder of PlanetPress Watch/Server.

Related topics:

- Import Documents (Page 244)
- Add Resident Documents in the Configuration Components Area (Page 245)

13.1.8 Add Resident Documents in the Configuration Components Area

By default, the Documents group displayed in Configuration Components area of the PlanetPress Watch/ Server Configuration program includes all those documents that are available on your local PlanetPress Watch/ Server server. Those documents that are *not* available on your local PlanetPress Watch/Server server, but that are either available on printers or on other PlanetPress Watch/Server servers must added to the list, otherwise you will not be able to use them in your PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration.

To add a resident document in the Configuration Components area:

1. In the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration Components area, click the Documents icon and choose **Insert** | **Resident Document**.
   The **Add Resident Document** dialog box is displayed.
2. Enter the document's name. *Note that the name you enter must exactly match the actual document name or PlanetPress Watch/Server will not be able to use it on the printer or remote PlanetPress Watch/ Server server.*
3. Click **OK**.

Related topics:

- LPR Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 240)
- Windows Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 241)
- FTP Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 241)
- Send to Folder Printer Queue Properties (Page 242)
- Printer Queue Advanced Properties (Page 243)
- Associate Documents and PlanetPress Watch/Server Printer Queues (Page 245)
- Manually Update Documents (Page 247)
- Print a Test Page (Page 246)

13.1.9 Associate Documents and PlanetPress Watch Printer Queues

One of the basic information stored in a PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queue is the list documents associated with the printer queue. Also stored in the printer queue are the properties of each document associated with the queue.

The Documents group displayed in Configuration Components area of the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program must include:

- Those documents that are available on your local PlanetPress Watch/Server server. They are displayed by default.
- Add Resident Documents in the Configuration Components Area (Page 245)

The documents listed in the Configuration Components area may be grouped. As you will see in the procedure below, documents are associated with queues using drag-and-drop. Dragging a group of documents over a queue associates all the documents in the group with the queue.

Procedures explaining how you can break the printer queue—document association follows the first procedure.

To assign documents to PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queues:

1. In the Documents group of the Configuration Components area, select either a single document or a group of documents.
2. Drag the selected documents over a PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queue.
   The selected document or the group of documents is associated with the printer queue. Each document keeps its default properties.

To break the association between a document and a given printer queue:

- Select the document as displayed under the printer queue in question and press **Delete**.

To break the association between a document and multiple printer queues:

1. Select the document as displayed under one of the printer queues in question and from the right-click menu choose **Delete Instances**.
   The **Delete Document Instances** dialog box appears.
2. In the **Printer Queue** list, select all those printer queues for which you want the printer queue—document association to be broken.
3. Click **OK**.

Related topics:

- LPR Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 240)
- Windows Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 241)
- FTP Output Printer Queue Properties (Page 241)
- Send to Folder Printer Queue Properties (Page 242)
- Printer Queue Advanced Properties (Page 243)
- Add Resident Documents in the Configuration Components Area (Page 245)
- Manually Update Documents (Page 247)
- Print a Test Page (Page 246)

13.1.10 Print a Test Page

To test communication between PlanetPress Watch/Server and any output location (local or remote printer, FTP site, etc.), you may generate a printer test page in either plain text or PostScript format.

When you print a PS (PostScript) page to a printer, the status page includes printer activation information.

To print a test page:

- Click a printer queue (or a group of printer queues) and, from the right-click menu, choose either **PS Test Page** or **Text Test Page**.

Related topics:

13.1.11 Manually Update Documents

Documents that have been associated with PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queues and that are stored directly on the printers, but that are not set to be automatically updated, may be updated manually in a variety of ways. For more information on document properties, refer to View and Edit the Properties of a Document Created using PlanetPress Design.

To manually update selected documents on multiple PlanetPress Watch/Server queues:

1. In the Documents or in the Printer Queues group of the Configuration Components area, select the documents you want to update, and from the right-click menu, select **Update Instances**.
   The **Update Document Instance to Printers** dialog box appears.
2. In the list of PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queues associated with the selected documents, select those which you want the documents updated. Click **Select All** to select all the available queues.
3. Click **OK**.

To manually update selected documents on a single PlanetPress Watch/Server queue:

- In the Printer Queues group of the Configuration Components area, select documents listed under a given queue, and from the right-click menu, select **Update**.

To manually update a given document on a single PlanetPress Watch/Server queue:

1. In the Printer Queues group of the Configuration Components area, double-click a document listed under a given queue.
   The **PlanetPress Watch/Server Document Options** dialog box appears.
2. In the **Printer Settings** tab, click **Update Now**. This option is only available if either the **On printer hard disk**, **In printer flash memory** or **RAM** option is selected.
3. Click **OK**.

Related topics:

14 Scheduling PlanetPress Watch Processes

Your configuration may include as many as 256 processes and each one of them may have its own schedule. This chapter contains information on processes and their basic settings.

Each PlanetPress Watch/Server process has its own schedule and polling interval, which determines when the process is allowed to perform its initial input task. It is the presence of input data at the source location and the processing of this data by the initial input task that sets off a process.

This section contains detailed information on:

- PlanetPress Watch/Server Process Options (Page 249)

14.1 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on PlanetPress Watch/Server process properties. It contains the following topic:

- PlanetPress Watch/Server Process Options (Page 249)

14.1.1 PlanetPress Watch Process Options

The Object Inspector lets you see and change only some of the properties associated with a process. To have access to the other properties, you must open the PlanetPress Watch/Server Process Options dialog box. This dialog box contains a time grid that lets you set the process' schedule.

PlanetPress Watch/Server Process Options properties are as follows:

General tab

Active: Select to make the process active. Clear to prevent this process from running when you send the configuration to PlanetPress Watch/Server.

Startup process: Select to make this process a startup process. A startup process runs only once when PlanetPress Watch/Server is started and cannot have an interval or specific schedule. Each configuration can have only a single startup process.

As soon as possible: Select to have the process run continuously. Clear to enable the Month, Week of month / by date and Time division boxes or to use the time grid to set exactly when you want this process to run.

Day(s) to keep backup: Indicate the number of days to keep backups of jobs processed by input tasks. Note that backups will only be kept for those input tasks that have the **Keep backup file** option selected and that they are required to resubmit input files. No backups are kept when PlanetPress Watch/Server runs in debug mode.

Polling interval: Enter the number of seconds during which the process' initial input task is to remain idle once it has finished processing all the data files available from the source location. For example, if you enter a value of 30, the process' initial input task will verify the presence of files from its source location the moment the process is on schedule, it will process all the available data files, then remain idle for 30 seconds, and once more verify the presence of files from its source location.

Month: Select the month of the year when the process should be run or select All months to have the process run all year long.

Week of month / by date: Select the desired option for the time grid. Note that any selection you make in this box will be interpreted based on the selection made in the Month box. If you chose All months in the Month box and Last in the Week of month / by date box, then the process will run on the last week of every month. If you chose January in the Month box and First in the Week of month / by date box, then the process will run only on the first week of January.

• Select Date to display dates on the grid's top ruler.

• Select any of the other options to display days on the top ruler.

• Select All weeks to have the process run every week.

• Select First, Second, Third or Fourth to have the process run on the first, second, third or fourth week.

• Select Last to have the process run only on the last week.

Time division: Select the duration of each daily segment in the time grid. If you select 00:15, each segment will represent only 15 minutes and each day will be made up of 96 blocks (4 blocks per hour times 24 hours). If you select 24:00, each segment will represent an entire day.

Poll once per activity period: Select to perform this process' initial input task no more than once for each set of contiguous blocks (blocks that are on the top of one another). Assume that you choose this option, and that for a given weekday you select the four following time blocks: from 8AM to 9AM, from 9AM to 10AM, from 8PM to 9PM, and from 9PM to 10PM. Then on that weekday the process' initial input task will poll its source location only once between 8AM and 10AM, and a second time between 8PM and 10PM.

Select All/Clear All: Click to select or deselect all the blocks in the time grid.

15 Advanced Configurations and Options

This chapter explains how you may expand PlanetPress Watch/Server as well as how to customize it to your own needs and preferences.

This section contains detailed information on:

- For detailed information on PlanetPress Fax or PlanetPress Image user options, refer to each application's respective chapters.

In this section, you will find answers to the following questions:

15.1 Key Concepts

This section covers questions relating to PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program and plugin options. It contains the following topics:

- Multiple PlanetPress Suite Installations (Page 252)
- PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration Program and Plugin Options
- Service Options Versus Properties (Page 255)
- Languages (Page 256)

15.1.1 Multiple PlanetPress Suite Installations

Why would I run components of the PlanetPress Suite on more than one computer?

The basic reason why you may want to run PlanetPress Watch/Server, or any other PlanetPress Suite component, on more than one computer is to take full advantage of the processing power of your network of computers. But this call is strictly case by case. Some PlanetPress Suite installations may process hundreds of inputs and outputs per hour, while other may process hundreds per minute. Naturally, the larger the number of inputs and outputs, the heavier the load on the hardware, and the more important the need to spread this load. Possible scenarios range from running a single instance of PlanetPress Watch/Server on a single computer to running one instance of PlanetPress Watch/Server and its related components on a different computer to process each input and output type.

In many cases though, a single instance of PlanetPress Watch/Server that sends some outputs to components, such as PlanetPress Fax and PlanetPress Image, running on other computers will lighten a heavy burden sufficiently to make everything run efficiently.

Sharing Resources within a LAN

Whenever you install a PlanetPress Suite component on a computer, PlanetPress Suite Messenger is installed and configured to run continuously. It is this communication component that lets you send PlanetPress Design documents to various instances of PlanetPress Watch/Server on your LAN, and that lets PlanetPress Watch/Server send jobs to components running on other computers.

Sharing Resources over the Internet

Since PlanetPress Suite Messenger only enables communication within a LAN, what do you do if you want to share your processing burden among multiple instances of PlanetPress Watch/Server running on different networks? If you want a computer running PlanetPress Watch/Server in your main office to send jobs to a computer running PlanetPress Image in your branch office, for example.
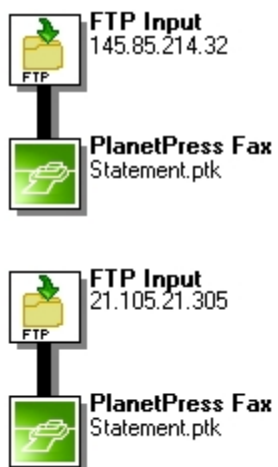
Quite simply, you add an FTP output task to the configuration of the PlanetPress Watch/Server instance running at your main office, and an FTP input task to the configuration of the PlanetPress Watch/Server instance running at your branch office. The output task will thus use the Internet to send the job to an FTP server, from which the input task will get it and hand it down to a PlanetPress Image output task. The following illustration shows just this. As you can see there is an action task on Computer 1 that renames the file before the output task places it on the FTP server. This is so that jobs coming from different computers can be identified on Computer 2.

LPD Input
AS400_Watch_Print_Queue

Rename
%h-@(1,35,1,10,true,true)

FTP Output
21.105.21.305

FTP Input
21.105.21.305

PlanetPress Fax
Statement.ptk
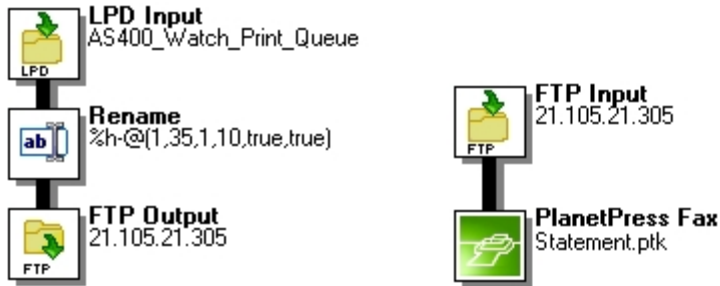
The dispatching of jobs over the Web multiplies even more the number of scenarios that can be imagined. If you have branches in many locations and if you regularly send faxes to you clients, for instance, consider the two scenarios:

- You have a single instance of PlanetPress Fax running at your main office that sends faxes from that one location. Since you are in many cases faxing long distance, your telephone bill is very high.
- You have an instance of PlanetPress Watch/Server at your main office that uses the Web to dispatch faxing jobs to other instances of PlanetPress Watch/Server running at your branch offices, where they are then processed and faxed. Granted that jobs were dispatched based on each client's address, most fax calls are local and your company's phone bill is much lower.

LPD Input
AS400_Watch_Print_Queue

Rename
%h-@(1,35,1,10,true,true)

Text Condition
T s1 contains s2
F

FTP Output
221.25.241.24

Text Condition
T s1 > s2
F

FTP Output
145.85.214.32

FTP Output
21.105.21.305

FTP Input
221.25.241.24

PlanetPress Fax
Statement.ptk
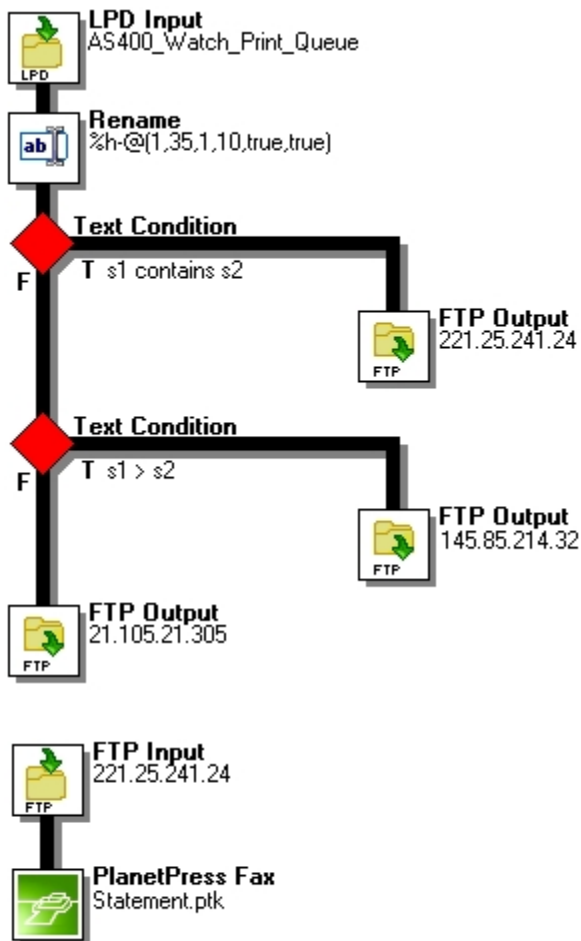
Related topics:

- PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration Program and Plugin Options
- Service Options Versus Properties (Page 255)
- Languages (Page 256)

15.2 Service Options Versus Properties

Why are some tasks configured primarily through service options, while others through their properties?

PlanetPress Watch/Server service options do not have the same impact on all existing tasks, so changing these options will change the way some tasks are performed and leave other tasks completely unchanged. The way some tasks are performed is determined by a combination of the task's properties and the current options selected for the service performing the task. Let us consider Serial input tasks, for example. The information indicating which serial port to poll, is stored in the PlanetPress Watch/Server user options. On the other hand, if you want to know whether or not the input task will keep backups of the files received via the serial port, you must check the task's properties.

So, you could say that there are three groups of tasks:

- Tasks that are very much affected by changes made to the service options:
  - Serial input tasks
- Tasks that are partially affected by changes made to the service options:
  - LPD input tasks
  - Telnet input tasks
  - PlanetPress Fax output tasks
  - PlanetPress Image output tasks
  - LPR output tasks
- Tasks that are not affected by changes made to the service options:
  - Error Bin input tasks
  - Create File input tasks
  - Email input tasks
  - Folder Capture input tasks
  - FTP input tasks
  - WinQueue input tasks
  - Printer Queue output task
  - Delete tasks
  - FTP output tasks
  - Send Email output tasks
  - Send To Folder output tasks

Related topics:

- Multiple PlanetPress Suite Installations (Page 252)
- PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration Program and Plugin Options
- Languages (Page 256)

15.3 Languages

Can I use PlanetPress Watch/Server in various languages and can I enter information in any language?

PlanetPress Watch/Server can be used in any of the five following languages: English, French, Spanish, German, or Japanese. The first time you use PlanetPress Watch/Server, it starts in the language used for the installation. You may change this setting as often as you like, but you need to restart the application every time you do so.

If you plan to enter and process information in non-European languages, you should know that PlanetPress Watch uses codepages when storing and retrieving information (a codepage is a mapping used to convert back and forth the letters and numbers used by humans to the numeric characters used by computers). By default, codepage 1252 is used for Latin languages (good for Afrikaans, Basque, Catalan, Danish, Dutch, English, Faroese, Finnish, French, Galician, German, Icelandic, Indonesian, Italian, Malay, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, Swahili and Swedish) and codepage 932 is used for Japanese.

If your system is set up to accept information in other languages (as defined in the Regional and Language Options of the Windows Control Panel), you may now select the **Use System Default Locale** option to mirror those settings (this option is only valid when PlanetPress Watch/Server itself is used in English.

Related topics:

- Multiple PlanetPress Suite Installations (Page 252)
- PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration Program and Plugin Options
- Service Options Versus Properties (Page 255)

15.4 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on user options. It contains the following topics:

15.4.1 Delete Images From Your Virtual Drive

Send Images to Printer action tasks make it possible for users to send local images to other computers that run either PlanetPress Watch/Server or PlanetPress Design. These images are stored in a location called the virtual drive. To remove images from your computer's virtual drive, you can use the **Virtual Drive Manager**.

To delete images from your virtual drive:

1. In the PlanetPress Watch/Server main menu, choose **Tools** | **Virtual Drive Manager**.
   The Virtual Drive Manager dialog box is displayed. It lists all the images currently stored in your computer's virtual drive.
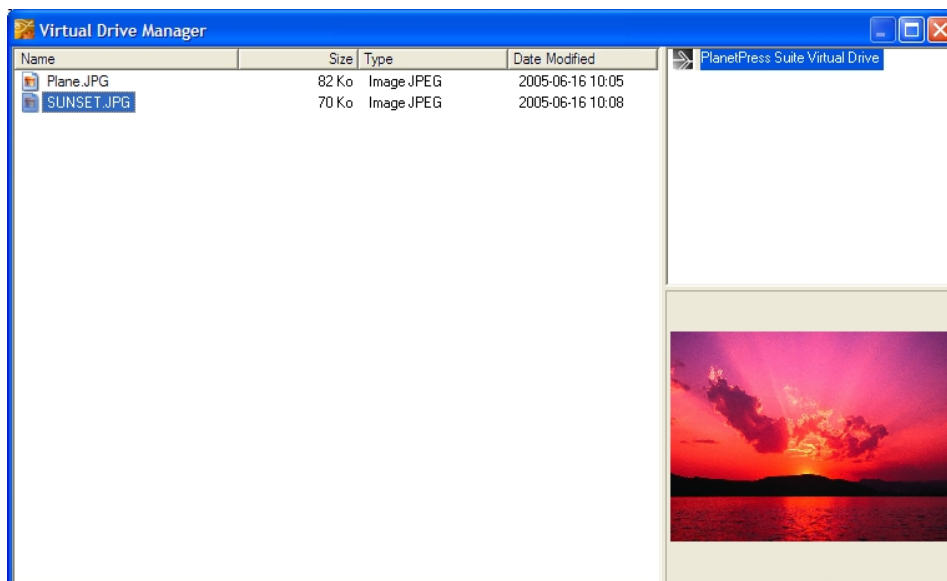
2. Select the images you want to delete.
3. Press the Delete key.
4. To close the Virtual Drive Manager, press Alt-F4.

15.4.2 Editor Options

The Script Editor is used to edit scripts used in Run Script and the XSLT Editor is used to edit scripts used in Open XSLT action tasks. Most of the options listed below are valid for both editors. Those options which are only valid for a specific editor are identified as such.

The available Script Editor and XSLT Editor options are as follows:

Editor

Auto indent mode: Select to automatically position the insertion pointer under the first non-blank character of the preceding line when you press ENTER.

Insert mode: Select to use Insert mode and clear to use Overwrite mode. In Insert mode, when you enter text, existing text shifts to accommodate it. In Overwrite mode, text you enter overwrites existing text. You can also press INSERT to toggle between the two modes.

Use tab character: Select to use the tab character instead of spaces to represent tabs in the program file. Clear to use spaces to represent tabs. You must clear the Smart tab option to use this option.

Smart tab: Select to use smart tabs. A smart tab advances with reference to the preceding line. It advances to align with the first non-blank character it encounters on the preceding line, from its current position forward. You must clear the Use tab character option to use Smart tabs.

Optimal fill: Select to optimize the indent of every auto-indented line by minimizing the number of space and/or tab characters it uses. You must select both Auto indent mode and Use tab character to use this option.

Backspace unindents: Select to move the insertion pointer to the previous indentation level when you press BACKSPACE. This is useful when you enter a block of code such as a for loop; you enter the for statement, advance one indentation level to enter the body of the for loop, then press BACKSPACE to enter the end for statement. You must select Auto indent mode to use this option.

Cursor through tabs: Select to move one by one through the spaces of tabs using the left or right arrow keys. Clear to have the arrow keys treat the tab as a single character. You must select Use tab character to use this option.

Group undo: Select to set the undo feature of the Editor to undo the last group of editing commands entered. An editing command is defined as a mouse click, a press on ENTER, or a press on any other key. A group of editing commands is a sequence of a single type of editing command. Clear to set the undo feature to undo only the last command entered.

Cursor beyond EOF: Select to make it possible to position the pointer beyond the end of the program file. Clear to prevent this. If you clear Insert mode and select Cursor beyond EOF, you can only overwrite the existing lines of the program; you cannot add lines to it.

Cursor beyond EOL: Select to make it possible to position the pointer beyond the end of the line. Clear to prevent this.

Keep trailing blanks: Select to preserve any blank spaces occurring at the end of a line. Clear to remove those blank spaces.

Persistent blocks: Select to have any text you enter immediately after selecting a block of code appended to that block of code as part of the selection. When you select this option,

you can also use the arrow keys to move within the code without affecting the selected code. You must select the Enable selection option to use the Persistent blocks option.

Overwrite blocks: Select to have any text you enter immediately after selecting a block of code replace that block of code. You must clear Persistent blocks and select Enable selection for this option to have an effect.

Enable selection: Select to permit the creation of selections in the Code area. If selected, you can create a selection by clicking and dragging the pointer over a portion of code, or by double-clicking to highlight the word or line under the pointer (the Double click line option determines whether a word or line highlights). You can cut, copy, paste, and print selections. If you also select Enable dragging, you can drag selections to reposition them in the code.

Enable dragging: Select to permit dragging and dropping a selection to reposition it in the program. This option works only if you also select Enable selection.

Enable search highlight: Select to highlight the search term match found in the code when you perform a search. Clear to prevent the highlighting. In both cases, the pointer appears after the last character of the search term match.

Double click line: Select to highlight the complete line of code when you double-click that line. Clear to highlight only the word under the pointer.

Find text at cursor: Use to set the behavior of the Find dialog box. Select to automatically copy the word under the pointer into the Text to find box when you open the Find dialog box. Clear to prevent the copy. If no previous search terms appear in the Text to find drop-down list, the Editor performs the copy regardless of whether this option is selected or cleared.

Block indent: Enter the number of spaces to jump for each block indent. The default is 2 and the maximum is 16. The Block indent typically should agree with the tab stops in the Tab stops option. Perform a block indent by selecting a region of code and pressing CTRL+SHIFT+I (to indent the code to the right) or CTRL+SHIFT+U (to move the code to the left).

Tab stops: Use to set the number of spaces to advance when you enter a tab character or to set a series of tab stops. Enter a single integer to set the number of spaces to advance with each tab. Enter a sequence of two or more integers, each separated by a space, to specify tab stops. The sequence must be in ascending order. Tab stops are measured in number of space characters. For example, a value of 20 places the tab stop at the 20th space character. You can also use the drop-down list to select a previously entered value.

Display

Display options group

Editor font: Use to select the font the Editor uses to display the program code. Select the Use monospace fonts only option to restrict the fonts available to fixed width fonts. A preview of the selected font, at the selected Size, appears in the Sample box.

Size: Use to select the font size the Editor uses to display the program code. A preview of the selected font, at the selected size, appears in the Sample box.

Use monospace fonts only: Select to display only fixed width fonts in the Editor font drop-down list. Every character in a fixed width font occupies the same amount of space.

Sample: Displays a preview of the font selected in the Editor font option, at the size selected in the Size option.

Margin and gutter group

Right margin: Select to display a vertical gray bar as a right margin indicator. Use the Right margin position drop-down list to set the position of this indicator. This indicator is an on-screen visual reference only. It does not print, and does not enforce word wrap on lines that exceed the number of characters set for it. It can be useful to indicate the right margin of the printed page, making it easy to determine whether a line of code extends beyond the printable area of the page.

Right margin position: Enter the position of the right margin indicator, in number of characters, relative to the left margin. For example, if you enter 80, the distance from the left margin to the right margin indicator is 80 characters. Use the drop-down list to select a previously-entered margin position.

Gutter: Select to have the Editor display a gutter between the Commands and Code areas. Use the Gutter width option to set the width of the gutter. Select the Line numbers on gutter option to display line numbers in this area.

Gutter width: Enter the width, in pixels, of the gutter. Use the drop-down list to select a previously-entered gutter width.

Line numbers on page: Select to display code line numbers at the left edge of the Code area. If you clear both this and the Line numbers on gutter option, no line numbers appear alongside the lines of code.

Line numbers on gutter: Select to display code line numbers in the gutter between the Commands and Code areas. Selecting this option has effect only if you selected the Gutter option. If you clear both this and the Line numbers on gutter option, no line numbers appear alongside the lines of code.

COLOR

Color options group

Mapping: Select a mapping for the content of the script in the script editor—the mapping is used as well when the script appears in the text box of the Run Script actions properties dialog. Each mapping (Default, Classic, Ocean, Twilight) includes pre-set color values and attributes for each script element as listed in the Elements list box. After selecting a mapping, you can edit individual elements to change their pre-sets by selecting them in the Element list box and editing their values.

Element list box: Select a script element in the Element list box, then edit the background and foreground color with which it is displayed, and/or its formatting attributes. Each element recognized for each scripting language, for example, a URL in a JavaScript script, is displayed with the properties you set.

Foreground: Select the color that the element highlighted in the Element list box is displayed with in the Script Editor.

Background: Select the background color that the element highlighted in the Element list box is displayed with in the Script Editor. The color is used to highlight the element as if it was selected with the cursor.

Attributes group

Bold: Select to bold the element highlighted in the Element list box when it is displayed in the Script Editor.

Italic: Select to italicize the element highlighted in the Element list box when it is displayed in the Script Editor.

Underline: Select to underline the element highlighted in the Element list box when it is displayed in the Script Editor.

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- General User Options (Page 271)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options
- Default Configuration User Options (Page 273)
- Notification Messages User Options (Page 274)
- Sample Data User Options (Page 277)
- Network User Options (Page 278)
- Logging User Options (Page 277)
- Messenger User Options (Page 267)
- HTTP Server Input User Options (Page 280)
- Serial Input Service User Options (Page 283)
- Telnet Input User Options (Page 284)
- FTP Output Service User Options (Page 285)
- LPR Output User Options (Page 262)

15.4.3 LPR Output User Options

LPR output user options control certain functions of the LPR Client service, which in turn has a direct impact on all LPR output tasks performed by PlanetPress Watch/Server on a given computer. The LPR Client service sends jobs using TCP/IP to LPD servers or LPD-compatible printers.

For information on the properties set in individual LPR output printer queues, refer to "LPR Output Printer Queue Properties" on page 417.

The available LPR output user options are as follows:

Protocol options group

Log all Winsock and network messages: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server keep a log of all Winsock and other network messages that occur through the LPR output. These messages are related to jobs being sent from PlanetPress Watch/Server to an LPD or LPD-compatible printer. Logs are kept in a **Log** folder relative to your install folder. They are named lpr*date*.log, where *date* is the current date in yyyymmdd numerical format. Note that changing this option also affects the log displayed in the PlanetPress Suite Service Console.

Print banner pages between jobs: Select to print banner pages between each job processed and output from the LPR output. The banner page includes details of the job being printed, including the job file name and the user name on the host computer running the LPR output client.

No source port range restriction: Select to remove any restrictions on the port PlanetPress Watch/Server uses to send the job file via the LPR/LPD protocol. Clear to restrict the port used to send the job to one in the range between 721 and 731.

Print up to: Select the maximum number of files that can be simultaneously sent to print by the LPR output service.

Error handling group

Max. retry period: Select the maximum time period, in hours, within which PlanetPress Watch/Server attempts to dispatch the job using the LPR output before giving up. Note that entering a maximum retry period of 0 hours disables retries altogether.

Retry interval: Select the interval, in seconds, at which time PlanetPress Watch/Server attempts to dispatch the job using the LPR output. This takes place only within the Max. retry period, after which the attempt ends.

Keep a backup when error occurs: Select to move the job file to a local folder relative to your install folder called **pplpr\error** in the case of an error.

LPR settings group

Time-out: Set the time in seconds the PlanetPress Watch/Server process waits when it sends jobs using the LPR protocol. The default value for the Time-out property is 7200 seconds (2 hours). On a time-out, partially sent data files are not passed to the rest of the process; the LPR output resets and is ready to send further data files. Log messages include the time-out duration.

Polling interval (seconds): Select the period of time—the default is 4 seconds—for which PlanetPress Watch/Server is to wait when it finishes dispatching jobs to the LPR printer queues before polling the LPR output folder again.

Related topics:

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

15.4.4 Network Ports Settings

The suggested network ports for the various components and plugins included in PlanetPress Watch/Server are described in this section.

Major Components and Services

The port configuration for each PlanetPress Watch component is described in the following table. The port number assignments comply with Internet standards. If the PlanetPress Watch component is not active, the port is not used.

Component	Protocol	Local Port	Remote Port
Email Input (POP3 mode)	TCP	Default 1Value is greater than 1024 and is assigned by Windows XP. This is the default.	110
Email Input (Outlook mode)	TCP	see Remote Port	See Microsoft Knowledge Base article 278339
Folder Capture	TCP/UDP	Default See "Major Components and Services"	Standard Windows file and printer sharing ports 2Windows NT 4.0 uses NetBIOS over TCP/IP for file and printer sharing, while Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 may be configured to use NetBIOS over TCP/IP or SMB over TCP/IP. The operating system may use additional ports. Refer to the Windows documentation for further information.: UDP 137, 138; TCP 139 (NetBIOS over TCP/IP (NetBT)) UDP 445; TCP 445 (SMB over TCP/IP)
LPD Input	TCP	515 (listening port)	N/A
FTP Input	TCP	Default See "Major Components and Services"	21
Telnet Input	TCP	Default See "Major Components and Services"	9100 (configurable)
FTP Output	TCP	Default See "Major Components and Services"	21
Email Output (SMTP mode)	TCP	Default See "Major Components and Services"	25
Email Output (Outlook mode)	TCP	See Email Input (Outlook mode)	See Email Input (Outlook mode)
Send to Folder Windows Queue Output	TCP	Default See "Major Components and Services"	Standard Windows file and printer sharing ports See "Major Components and Services": 137, 138 and/or 139 (NetBIOS over TCP/IP (NetBT)) 445 (SMB over TCP/IP)
LPR Output	TCP	Default or 721 to 731 3If the "No source port range restriction" option is checked (recommended),	515

Component	Protocol	Local Port	Remote Port
		see footnote a. If the option is unchecked, the local port will be chosen from a range going from 721 to 731.	
PlanetPress Database	TCP or UDP	unknown4Contact your DBMS vendor to determine which ports are used by the ODBC driver for accessing a network database.	unknownSee "Major Components and Services"
SNMP Condition	UDP	Default See "Major Components and Services"	161

PlanetPress Suite Messenger User Options

Apart from enabling communication between the various parts of PlanetPress Suite, the PlanetPress Suite Messenger also manages local instances of the PlanetPress SuiteAlambic.

The available Messenger user options are as follows:

PlanetPress Alambic options group

Let me set up how many instances to run: Select this option if you want to limit the number of instances of the Alambic that PlanetPress Watch/Server can run. Then enter the number of instances, a value ranging from 1 to 32, in the box below. When this option is not selected, PlanetPress Watch/Server starts a minimum of three instances and a maximum of eight, based on the number of CPUs available on the server.

Close inactive instances after: If you want the PlanetPress Suite Messenger to close inactive instances of the Alambic after a given number of minutes, enter a value in this box. Enter a value of "0" if you do not want the PlanetPress Suite Messenger to terminate idle instances of the Alambic (this is the default behavior).

Logging options group

Delete log files after: Enter the number of days after which to delete the PlanetPress Suite Messenger service logs. Each log covers a 24-hour period and is kept in the Log folder, which is located in the PlanetPress Suite installation folder.

Verbose log: Select this option if you want the log to contain a maximum amount of information.

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- General User Options (Page 271)

Access Restrictions

As servers, PlanetPress Suite Messenger and the PlanetPress Watch LPD behave by opening a port to listen, and wait for incoming connections. It is recommended that you protect these servers by restricting access to only a few identified client systems.

Use the Access Manager to specify client IP addresses for access to the PlanetPress Suite Messenger and PlanetPress Watch LPD servers.

The default access settings are as follows.

Server	Contents	Comment
PlanetPress Suite Messenger	127.0.0.1	Only the local computer is allowed access.
PlanetPress Watch LPD	255.255.255.255	Access is granted to everyone.

These settings can be modified to grant access to various groups of addresses or specific addresses, as in the following examples.

Host IP address	Result
255.255.255.255	Access is granted to everyone. For security purposes, avoid using this IP address.
127.0.0.1	This value specifies the local host for which access is reserved exclusively for the local host system.
127.0.0.1 192.168.100.255 192.168.101.42	Access is granted to the local host, the entire 192.168.100 subnet, and the unique address 192.168.101.42.

Related topics:

- Sample Data User Options (Page 277)
- Network User Options (Page 278)
- Logging User Options (Page 277)
- HTTP Server Input User Options (Page 280)
- LPD Input User Options (Page 281)
- Serial Input Service User Options (Page 283)
- Telnet Input User Options (Page 284)
- FTP Output Service User Options (Page 285)
- LPR Output User Options (Page 262)

15.4.5 Change Languages

The first time you use the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program, it is started in the language used for the installation. You may change this setting as often as you like, but you will have to restart the application every time you do so.

To change the language used by the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program:

1. From the main menu, choose **Tools** | **Select Language**.
   The Select Language dialog box appears. This box lists all the languages that can be used by PlanetPress Watch/Server as well as an optional check box.
   Use System Default Locale: Select to mirror your language settings, as defined in the Regional and Language Options of the Windows Control Panel. This option is typically used to enter and process information in non-European languages. It is only enabled when English is selected as the program language.
2. Select the desired language and option.
3. Click OK.

Related topics:

- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- General User Options (Page 271)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options
- Default Configuration User Options (Page 273)
- Notification Messages User Options (Page 274)
- Sample Data User Options (Page 277)
- Network User Options (Page 278)
- Logging User Options (Page 277)
- Messenger User Options (Page 267)
- HTTP Server Input User Options (Page 280)
- LPD Input User Options (Page 281)
- Serial Input Service User Options (Page 283)
- Telnet Input User Options (Page 284)
- FTP Output Service User Options (Page 285)
- LPR Output User Options (Page 262)
- Editor Options (Page 258)

15.4.6 Change your User Options

Options govern the behavior of various things in PlanetPress Watch/Server. To simplify matters, they have been organized in three groups: Appearance, Behavior and plugin.

To change your current user options:

1. Choose **Tools** | **User Options**.

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

The **User Options** dialog box appears.

2. Expand the appropriate group if needed on the left-hand side, and click the name of the options you want to change. See below for detailed information on all the available options.
3. Once you have changed the options as required, click **OK** to close the dialog box.

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- General User Options (Page 271)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options
- Default Configuration User Options (Page 273)
- Notification Messages User Options (Page 274)
- Sample Data User Options (Page 277)
- Network User Options (Page 278)
- Logging User Options (Page 277)
- Messenger User Options (Page 267)
- HTTP Server Input User Options (Page 280)
- LPD Input User Options (Page 281)
- Serial Input Service User Options (Page 283)
- Telnet Input User Options (Page 284)
- FTP Output Service User Options (Page 285)
- LPR Output User Options (Page 262)
- Editor Options (Page 258)

15.4.7 Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options

The Script Editor is used to edit scripts used in Run Script action tasks and the XSLT Editor is used to edit XSLT code used in Open XSLT action tasks. For detailed information on the available editor options, refer to Editor Options (Page 258).

To change your current Script Editor or XSLT Editor user options:

1. Open the Script Editor or the XSLT Editor.
2. Choose **Tools | Editor Options**.
   The **Editor Options** or **XSLT Editor Options** dialog box appears.
3. Once you have changed the options as required, click **Close** to close the dialog box.

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- General User Options (Page 271)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options
- Default Configuration User Options (Page 273)
- Notification Messages User Options (Page 274)
- Sample Data User Options (Page 277)
- Network User Options (Page 278)
- Logging User Options (Page 277)
- Messenger User Options (Page 267)
- HTTP Server Input User Options (Page 280)
- LPD Input User Options (Page 281)
- Serial Input Service User Options (Page 283)
- Telnet Input User Options (Page 284)

- FTP Output Service User Options (Page 285)
- LPR Output User Options (Page 262)
- Editor Options (Page 258)

15.4.8 General User Options

Changes to the general user options are applied immediately.

The available general user options are as follows:

Colors group

Variable properties: Select a color for the labels identifying variable property boxes. The default color is maroon.

Debug: Select the color applied to the PlanetPress Watch/Server Process area when in Debug mode. The default color is Btn Face.

Highlighted tasks and branches: Select the background color for highlighted tasks and branches in the Process Area's invisible grid. The default color is yellow.

Disabledtasks and branches: Select the background color for disabled tasks and branches in the Process Area's invisible grid. The default color is grey.

Inactive process

Color: Select the color to use to identify inactive processes in the Configuration Components area. The default is red.

Style group

This group includes font attributes that can all be used to identify inactive processes in the Configuration Components area. The default attributes is strikethrough.

Bold: Select to use a bolded font to display inactive processes.

Underline: Select to use an underlined font to display inactive processes.

Italic: Select to use an italic font to display inactive processes.

**Strikethrough: Select to use a strikethrough font to display inactive processes.**

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options
- Default Configuration User Options (Page 273)

15.4.9 Object Inspector User Options

Changes to the Object Inspector user options are applied immediately.

The available Object Inspector user options are as follows:

Colors group

Use the colors group to set the color of individual Object Inspector elements. To change the color of a given element, select it in the list box above and then choose a color from the drop-down list below.

Vertical line 3D: Select to display the vertical line between property names and their values using a 3-dimensional effect.

Use groups: Select to organize the display of properties into groups. Clear the selection to display properties in alphabetical order. When the Object Inspector displays properties in groups, it displays an expand/collapse button to the left of the name of the group for expanding or collapsing the group.

Sunken active property: Select to use a recessed effect to display the currently selected property.

Border active property: Select to display a border around the currently selected property.

Show lines: Select to display lines between elements.

Line style: Select a style for the lines.

Reset to default: Click to reset all the Object Inspector options to their default values.

Related topics:

15.4.10 Configuration Components Area User Options

The Configuration Components area displays processes, documents and PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queues (see What are PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queues?).
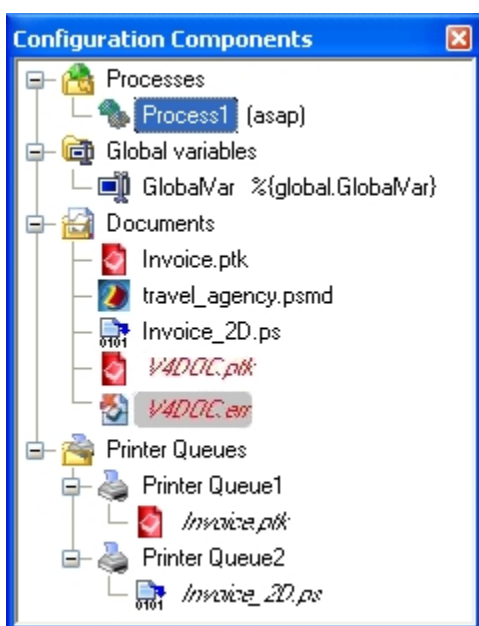
A) The Processes group. B) A current process set to run as soon as possible (ASAP).C) The Global variables group. D) A global variable. E) The Documents group. F) Documents that are either available on the local PlanetPress Watch/Server workstation or on specific printers. The fourth document appears in a red, italicized font to draw your attention to the fact that it can no longer be found on the local PlanetPress Watch/Server workstation. The fifth item listed in this group cannot be used because it contains errors. G) The Printer Queues group. H) A PlanetPress Watch/Server printer queue. I) Documents associated with a printer queue. The second document actually resides on the printer itself.

15.4.11 Default Configuration User Options

Changes to the Default Configuration user options are applied immediately.

The available Default Configuration user options are as follows:

Use default configuration group

Select this group to use default input and output tasks when you create a new process. If this group is not selected, each new process you will add will begin and end with unknown tasks.

Default input task: Select an input task to use as the default input task when you add a new process. Click the Configure button located to the right of this box to set the properties of the selected input task.

Default output task: Select an output task to use as the default output task when you add a new process. Click the Configure button located to the right of this box to set the properties of the selected output task.

Enable Undo/Redo functionality: Select this option to enable or disable the Undo functionality. Disabling the Undo/Redo functionality frees up a lot of memory and may thus speed up your system.

Auto Save every: Select to enable the Auto Save functionality. The autosave delay is set in the box below.

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- General User Options (Page 271)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options
- Notification Messages User Options (Page 274)
- Sample Data User Options (Page 277)
- Network User Options (Page 278)
- Logging User Options (Page 277)
- Messenger User Options (Page 267)
- HTTP Server Input User Options (Page 280)
- LPD Input User Options (Page 281)
- Serial Input Service User Options (Page 283)
- Telnet Input User Options (Page 284)
- FTP Output Service User Options (Page 285)
- LPR Output User Options (Page 262)
- Editor Options (Page 258)

15.4.12 Notification Messages User Options

Notification Messages user options control the display of certain PlanetPress Watch/Server messages. Changes to these options are applied immediately.

The available Notification Messages user options are as follows:

User mismatch: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration display a prompt when a different user opens PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration.

Task deletion: Select to prompt for confirmation when deleting a task.

Document deletion: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration prompt for confirmation when deleting a document.

Group of documents deletion: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration prompt for confirmation when deleting a group of documents from the Configuration Components area.

Empty group deletion: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration prompt for confirmation to delete a group when you remove the last of its member objects. If you clear this option, groups are automatically deleted when their last members are removed.

Invalid name: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration warn you when you try to rename an object in the Configuration Components incorrectly. Names can include letters, numbers, and underscores; the first character of a name cannot be a number.

Printer queues document group update: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration prompt you when adding a document to a group under the Documents category in the Configuration Components area. You are only prompted if the group of documents is assigned to one or more printer queues. PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration can add the new document to all assigned groups under the Printer Queues category automatically.

Configuration send with wrong user: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration prompt for confirmation when you are sending a configuration while logged onto the computer as a user other than the one associated with the PlanetPress Watch/ Server service.

Configuration save: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration prompt you to save the current configuration when exiting PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration or before opening another configuration file.

Configuration send: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration prompt you to send the current configuration to run in the PlanetPress Watch/Server service when exiting PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration or before opening another configuration file.

Nothing to configure: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration notify you when you try to set properties for a task that does not have any properties. For example, the Error Bin input has no properties because it only inputs jobs sent to it through On Error properties of tasks in other processes. When you attempt to edit its properties, it displays the "nothing to configure" message when this option is selected.

No registry: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration notify you if it cannot find an install location in the registry. In such cases, the path of the currently running PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration executable is used as the install path.

PlanetPress Watch/Server 3 documents and job commands transfer: Select to have PlanetPress Watch Configuration display a prompt when you import a configuration from PlanetPress Watch Configuration 3.x that allows you to transfer documents and job commands.

Plugin not found: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration display a prompt when you import a configuration, and one or more of the plugins used in the configuration are not found on the computer running PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration.

Prompt on configuration overwrite: Select to have PlanetPress Watch prompt for confirmation when a configuration is about to overwrite a file with the same name.

Prompt on no active process to send: Select to have PlanetPress Watch prompt for confirmation when attempting to send a configuration although no processes are active.

Prompt on overwrite of a document: Select to have PlanetPress Watch prompt for confirmation when a document that is being imported using File | Import Document is about to overwrite an existing document.

Prompt on Document overwrite when PlanetPress Watch is running: Select to have PlanetPress Watch prompt for confirmation when a document that is being imported using File | Import Document is about to overwrite an existing document. The only difference between this option and the previous option is that this option will warn the user that the document about to be overwritten may currently be used by PlanetPress Watch/Server.

Prompt on Importing a non-PlanetPress Document: Select to have PlanetPress Watch prompt for confirmation when a document that is not a valid PlanetPress document is about to be imported. This may occur if a non-PlanetPress document will inadvertently have a PP4 or PSI file extension.

Prompt on Resetting Document Attributes: Select to have PlanetPress Watch prompt for confirmation when importing a hidden or read-only document using the File | Import document command. By confirming the import, you allow PlanetPress Watch/Server to reset the document's attributes to 'Visible' and 'Read and Write'.

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- General User Options (Page 271)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options
- Default Configuration User Options (Page 273)
- Sample Data User Options (Page 277)
- Network User Options (Page 278)
- Logging User Options (Page 277)
- Messenger User Options (Page 267)
- HTTP Server Input User Options (Page 280)
- LPD Input User Options (Page 281)
- Serial Input Service User Options (Page 283)
- Telnet Input User Options (Page 284)
- FTP Output Service User Options (Page 285)

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

15.4.13 Sample Data User Options

Sample Data user options control the way the Data Selector displays the sample data file. Changes to these options are applied immediately.

The available sample data user options are as follows:

Select Font: Click to access the Font dialog box to select the font in which the Data Selector displays the sample data file.

Default text editor: Contains the complete path and name of the executable file of the application used as the default text editor. For Windows Notepad, only the executable name (Notepad.exe) is required.

Related topics:

15.4.14 Logging User Options

Logging user options control the level of detail added to the PlanetPress Watch/Server log file. Since log files cover 24 hours of operation, choosing to log every task performed by PlanetPress Watch/Server may result in the creation of excessively large files. Note that logs are standard text files stored in the **Log** folder, which is located in the PlanetPress Watch/Server installation folder. They are named **ppwdate.log**, where *date* is the current date in *yyyymmdd* numerical format.

Bear in mind that changing the logging options also affects the logs displayed in the PlanetPress Suite Service Console .

All the messages displayed by the PlanetPress Suite Service Console as well, as all the messages stored in the logs, must use the locale encoding of the system on which the PlanetPress Suite software runs. Messages that use a different encoding may be partly or completely unreadable.

The available Logging user options are as follows:

Log level group

Startup and shutdown: Select to only track when the PlanetPress Watch/Server service is started and stopped.

Task success and failure: Select to only track when tasks in the processes running in a PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration succeed and fail.

Task success and failure with details: Select to track when the tasks in processes running in PlanetPress Watch/Server succeed and fail, with details. Details can include why tasks fail and how successful tasks are executed.

All events with details: Select to log everything that happens in PlanetPress Watch/Server. This includes when it starts and stops, the success and failure of tasks, and details on the success and failure of tasks.

Delete log files after: Select how many days log files are kept before being deleted. Each log file covers a single 24-hour period and is kept in the Log folder, which is located in the PlanetPress Suite installation folder.

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- General User Options (Page 271)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options
- Default Configuration User Options (Page 273)
- Notification Messages User Options (Page 274)
- Sample Data User Options (Page 277)
- Network User Options (Page 278)
- LPD Input User Options (Page 281)
- Messenger User Options (Page 267)
- HTTP Server Input User Options (Page 280)
- LPD Input User Options (Page 281)
- Serial Input Service User Options (Page 283)
- Serial Input Service User Options (Page 283)
- Telnet Input User Options (Page 284)
- FTP Output Service User Options (Page 285)
- LPR Output User Options (Page 262)
- Editor Options (Page 258)

15.4.15 Network User Options

Network user options let you Configure NetWare® Login user options, so that PlanetPress Watch can access your Novell® NetWare network. The following procedure also lets you choose the Universal Naming Convention (UNC), which removes inconsistencies when accessing paths on Novell and other networks. Changes to these options are applied immediately.

The available network user options are as follows:

NetWare Login group

Select this group to enable the user options PlanetPress Watch/Server requires to access NetWare resources. When you select this option, you must enter values in the Username, Password, and Tree boxes below to properly log in to NetWare (the other properties are optional).

Username: Enter your NetWare username. This is the user the PlanetPress Watch/Server service uses to log in to NetWare at runtime. The service accesses resources as configured for this user.

Password: Enter the NetWare password corresponding to the user you entered in the Username text box.

Tree: Enter the Netware Directory Services (NDS) tree where the user resides. This is the user you entered in the Username text box. Click Trees to navigate to the desired tree. You must enter a value for the Tree text box.

Context: Enter the context on the NDS tree where the user you enter in the Username text box resides. *You can leave this box empty if there is a single root context on your NDS tree, if you can perform a context-free login, or if you enter a server name in the Server box. Note that PlanetPress Watch and PlanetPress Image use the same security context when connected to a NetWare server and that they each use one connection. Also note that using erroneous Tree or Context information may cause PlanetPress Watch/Server and its services to crash.*

Server: Enter the server where the NDS tree you entered in the Tree text box resides. You do not have to specify a server if there is only a single configured server on your network. Click Servers to navigate to the desired server on which the NDS tree containing the user resides.

Expand folder paths in UNC (Universal Naming Convention) format: Select to expand all paths used in the configuration to UNC. This converts map drives such as "f:\, to absolute paths referenced from a server in the format "\\server-name\shared-resource-pathname". This is useful, for example, when a user logging in and out of NetWare references local resources NetWare has not mapped. It is necessary when PlanetPress Watch/Server services run on computers where no user is logged on. INo mapped drives are recognized and paths must be in UNC format to work. It can also be useful when sharing configurations between users. When you select this option, the next time you configure a task after editing properties and clicking OK in its properties dialog box, entered paths are expanded to UNC format.

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- General User Options (Page 271)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options
- Default Configuration User Options (Page 273)
- Notification Messages User Options (Page 274)
- Sample Data User Options (Page 277)
- Logging User Options (Page 277)
- Messenger User Options (Page 267)

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

15.4.16 HTTP Server Input User Options

HTTP server input user options control the server protocol aspects of the PlanetPress Watch/Server HTTP Server input tasks. This is where you enable and configure secure communication for the HTTP Server.

For information on the properties set in individual HTTP Server input tasks, refer to "HTTP Server Input Task Properties" on page 191.

The available HTTP Server user options are as follows:

Protocol options group

Port: Select the TCP port to use. The default port is 8080, the official HTTP alternate port, so as not to interfere with the standard HTTP port (80).

Time out: Set the timeout period in seconds. The default value is 120 seconds.

Verbose log: Select to enable to keep a verbose log. Note that a communication log is generated whether or not this option is selected. If you use a secure connection, the log will contain extra information.

Enable secure HTTP

Check this option to enable secure data exchange over the Web. This enables the boxes below and lets you specify your secure communication settings.

Root certificate: Enter the name of your root certificate file (including its complete absolute path). In many cases, the root certificate and certificate will be one and the same.

Certificate: Enter the name of your root certificate file (including its complete absolute path).

Key: Enter the name of your key file (including its complete absolute path).

Password: If your key file uses a password, enter it in this box.

Encription protocol: Choose your cryptographic protocol.

Related topics:

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

15.4.17 LPD Input User Options

LPD input user options control certain functions of the PlanetPress Watch/Server LPD Server service, which in turn has an impact on LDP input tasks performed by PlanetPress Watch/Server on a given computer. The LPD Server service receives jobs using TCP/IP from LPD servers.

For information on the properties set in individual LDP input tasks, refer to "LPD Input Task Properties" on page 194.

The available LPD input user options are as follows:

Protocol options group

Log all Winsock and network messages: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server keep a log of *all Winsock and other network messages* that occur through the LPD service. These are messages related to jobs being sent from other systems through LPR, and being received by PlanetPress Watch/Server via LPD. Since these messages can accumulate, you have the option of not logging them. Log files are kept in the Log folder, which is located in the PlanetPress Suite installation folder. They are named lpddate.log, where *date* is the current date in the *yyyymmdd* numerical format. Note that changing this option also affects the log displayed in the PlanetPress Suite Service Console.

No source port range restriction: Select to remove any restrictions on the port of the LPR client computer that PlanetPress Watch/Server accepts data files from. Clear to have PlanetPress Watch/Server only accept data files sent from ports ranging between 721 and 731 on the LPR client computer.

Strict RFC 1179 control file: Select to disable control file extensions the LPD service implements for some flavors of UNIX and LPR. This enforces the basic Line Printer Daemon protocol.

Enable BSD compatibility mode: Select to have the LPD service emulate a BSD UNIX server. Although RFC 1179 is supposed to describe the BSD LPD/LPR protocol, and the LPD input in PlanetPress Watch/Server is RFC1179-compliant, there are some incompatibilities between the RFC and the BSD implementation. This option compensates for some of these incompatibilities. If you are not sure about the source of your output, clear this option.

LDP settings group

Timeout (sec): Set the time in seconds the PlanetPress Watch process waits for the transfer of bytes in the data file before ending the transfer of this file. The default value for the Time-out property is 7200 seconds (2 hours). On a time-out, partially received data files are not passed to the rest of the process; the LPD input resets and is ready to receive further data files. Log messages include the time-out duration.

Related topics:

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

15.4.18 Serial Input Service User Options

Serial input user options control certain functions of the PlanetPress Watch/Server Serial Capture service, which in turn has a direct impact on all Serial input tasks performed by PlanetPress Watch/Server on a given computer. For information on the properties set in individual Serial input tasks, refer to "Serial Input Task Properties" on page 195.

The available Serial input user options are as follows:

Serial settings group

Serial port: Select the port of the computer where the Serial input is connected to (COM1 through COM8).

Baud rate: Select the baud rate of the Serial input. The baud rate is the number of bits transferred per second. The transferred bits include the start bit, the data bits, the parity bit (if defined), and the stop bits.

Data bits: Select the number of data bits defining the incoming data file on this serial port. The data bits transferred through a serial port represent the data content. This excludes the start, parity, and stop bits: these are bits defining the beginning and end of each unit of transferred data, as well as error detection provided by the parity bit. The majority of serial ports use between five and eight data bits. Binary data is typically transmitted as eight bits. Text-based data is transmitted as seven bits or eight bits. If the data is based on the ASCII character set, a minimum of seven bits is required. If an eighth bit is used, it must have a value of 0. If the data is based on the extended ASCII character set, eight bits must be used.

Parity: Select the type of parity used for error detection. The parity transfers through the serial connection as a single bit. It is used to verify that each set of data bits transfers correctly. It is then stripped away before the data file passes through the rest of the PlanetPress Watch/Server process. Select *None* to ignore all parity bits; no error detection occurs.

Stop bits: Since most serial ports operate asynchronously, the transmitted byte must be identified by start and stop bits. The start bit indicates when the data byte is about to begin and the stop bit(s) indicates when the data byte was transferred. The start bit is always 0 to mark the beginning of the byte, but the stop bit can be a single 1, or two bits each with a value of 1.

Time-out: Set the time in seconds the PlanetPress Watch/Server process waits for the transfer of bytes in the data file before ending the transfer of this file. On a time-out, partially received data files are not passed to the rest of the process; the Serial input resets, ready to receive further data files.

Job delimiters: Enter the strings that tell PlanetPress Watch/Server the data file being retrieved through the Serial input is complete. Each line in the Job delimiters text box is a different delimiter. You can enter as many delimiters as you want, one per line. The three default delimiters that appear are three of the most commonly recognized end of a file delimiters.

Log (verbose): Select to keep a log of errors and other information related to the Serial input. Since these messages can accumulate, you have the option of not logging them. Log

files are kept in the Log folder, which is located in the PlanetPress Suite installation folder. They are named serdate.log, where date is the current date in the *yyyymmdd* numerical format. Note that changing this option also affects the log displayed in the PlanetPress Suite Service Console.

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- General User Options (Page 271)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options
- Default Configuration User Options (Page 273)
- Notification Messages User Options (Page 274)
- Sample Data User Options (Page 277)
- Network User Options (Page 278)
- Logging User Options (Page 277)
- Messenger User Options (Page 267)
- HTTP Server Input User Options (Page 280)
- Telnet Input User Options (Page 284)
- FTP Output Service User Options (Page 285)
- LPR Output User Options (Page 262)
- Editor Options (Page 258)

15.4.19 Telnet Input User Options

The Telnet input user option controls the log of the PlanetPress Watch/Server Telnet Capture service. Since PlanetPress Watch/Server lets you monitor multiple Telnet inputs simultaneously, the port setting for all Telnet input tasks cannot be set in the user options.

For information on the properties set in individual Telnet input tasks, refer to "Telnet Input Task Properties" on page 196.

The available Telnet input user options are as follows:

Protocol options group

Log all Winsock and network messages (very verbose): Select to have PlanetPress Watch/ Server keep a log of *all Winsock and other network messages* that occur from the Telnet input. These messages are related to files sent from other systems using a telnet connection. Since these messages can accumulate, you have the option of not logging them. Log files are kept in the Log folder, which is located in the PlanetPress Suite installation folder. They are named tel*date*.log, where *date* is the current date in yyyymmdd numerical format. Note that changing this option also affects the log displayed in the PlanetPress Suite Service Console.

Related topics:

- Change Languages (Page 269)
- Change your User Options (Page 269)
- Change your Script Editor or XSLT Editor User Options (Page 270)
- General User Options (Page 271)
- Object Inspector User Options (Page 272)
- Configuration Components Area User Options

15.4.20 FTP Output Service User Options

FTP output user options control certain functions of the FTP Client service, which in turn has a direct impact on all FTP output tasks performed by PlanetPress Watch/Server on a given computer.

For information on the properties set in individual FTP output tasks, refer to FTP Output Task Properties (Page 139).

The available FTP output user options are as follows:

Protocol options group

Log all Winsock and network messages: Select to have PlanetPress Watch/Server keep a log of all Winsock and other network messages that occur through the FTP output. These messages are related to jobs sent from PlanetPress Watch/Server to a server via an FTP output, which in turn uses the FTP output service. Log files are kept in the Log folder, which is located in the PlanetPress Suite installation folder. They are named ftp*date*.log, where *date* is the current date in yyyymmdd numerical format. Note that changing this option also affects the log displayed in the PlanetPress Suite Service Console.

Interval: Select the interval (in seconds) at which the FTP service is to dispatch jobs from the ftpPut folder to the FTP sites.

Back up job on error: Select to move the job file to a local folder ftpPut\error if an error occurs while sending a job via the FTP output. This folder is relative to your install folder.

FTP Port: Select the port number that you want PlanetPress Watch/Server to use for all FTP output tasks. The recommended port is 21 (the default setting).

Related topics:

16 Error Handling

This section explains how you can build specific error behaviors into your configuration to determine exactly what is to happen when a something fails.

This section presents the error handling features built into PlanetPress Watch/Server and explains how to set error handling properties for branches, conditions and tasks.

This section contains detailed information on:

- Error Bin Input Task Properties (Page 288)
- Paste On Error Properties (Page 288)

16.1 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on error handling. It contains the following topics:

16.1.1 Error Bin Input Task Properties

With the exception of the Error Bin input task, all the tasks included in an error process can have their own on error properties. The same goes for the branches and conditions.

Error Bin input task properties are as follows:

Backup tab

Backup input files: Select to keep a backup of the files received by this Error Bin input task.

Backup filename: Enter the name to use for the backup files. Consider using variables to prevent successive files from overwriting one another.

Related topics:

16.1.2 Paste On Error Properties

You may configure the on error properties of each branch, condition or task individually (see Configurations, Processes and Tasks), but you may also paste these properties between various items displayed in the PlanetPress Watch/Server process area.

To paste On Error Properties:

1. Copy the branch, condition or task with the desired on error properties.
2. Click the branch, condition or task to which you want to paste the on error properties, and choose **Edit | Paste On Error**.

Related topics:

17 Debugging PlanetPress Watch Processes

Debug PlanetPress Watch/Server processes to correct errors and increase efficiency. You can also configure tasks and make data selections on the fly when you Debug PlanetPress Watch/Server processes.

The debugging features in PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration let you debug your processes and fine tune its tasks.

This section contains detailed information on:

- Add Job Information to the Sample Data (Page 290)
- Perform Tasks in Debug Mode (Page 290)
- Use the Message Area Right-Click Menu (Page 291)

17.1 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed information on the debugging features available in the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program. It contains the following topics:

- Add Job Information to the Sample Data (Page 290)
- Perform Tasks in Debug Mode (Page 290)
- Use the Message Area Right-Click Menu (Page 291)

17.1.1 Add Job Information to the Sample Data

To add typical job information to mimic actual job information elements, which are not available with sample data, you can use the Object Inspector.

You must do this before you start to debug your process, since these elements are only added when the sample data file is loaded.

To add job information to the sample data:

1. In the Object Inspector, click a Sample job info box.
   The cursor appears in the corresponding box.
2. Type in the job information element and press **Enter**.

Related topics:

- Perform Tasks in Debug Mode (Page 290)
- Use the Message Area Right-Click Menu (Page 291)

17.1.2 Perform Tasks in Debug Mode

The PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program's debug mode gives you a number of options when it comes to performing the tasks included in your process. You may perform all tasks, groups of tasks using breakpoints, individual tasks, and even jump over specific tasks.

Seeing how the job file is changed by the tasks included in your process is in many cases extremely useful debugging information. The PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program lets you see the job file either as a text file or as a hexadecimal file.

To perform tasks in Debug mode:

1. Choose a sample data file to use for debugging (see Choose a Line Printer, CSV, ASCII, Channel Skip or XML Sample Data File (Page 120) or Choose a Database Type Sample Data File (Page 120)).
2. To put or remove a breakpoint on given task, do the following:
3. Click the task.
4. Click   on the built-in toolbar.
5. To start running the process, do one of the following:
   - To perform either all its tasks, or all those tasks placed before the first breakpoint, click   on the built-in toolbar.
   - To perform only its second task (the initial input task is never performed in Debug mode), click

         on the built-in toolbar.
     The sample data file is used to replace the data normally polled by the initial input file and the process starts to run. A blue arrow is displayed in the Process Area to indicate which task will next be performed.

6. If the process is stopped, either because you are performing tasks one by one, or because a breakpoint has been reached, do one of the following:

   ▪ To perform all those tasks placed before the next breakpoint, or all the remaining tasks in the process (if there are no more breakpoints in the process), click ▶ .

   ▪ To perform only the next task, click ⬇ .

   ▪ To jump over the next task, click ⤵ . Note that stepping over tasks that include PlanetPress Talk code may generate PlanetPress Talk errors in other tasks.
   The blue arrow moves to indicate which task will next be performed.

7. To see the content of the job file in its current state (after it has been processed by the previous task and before it is processed by the following task), do one of the following:

   ▪ To see the job file in text format, click 📄 or choose **Debug | Sample Data File | View as Text**.

   ▪ To see the job file in hexadecimal format, click 🔳 or choose **Debug | Sample Data File | View as Hex**.

8. To stop the process altogether and to leave Debug mode, click 🔴 on the built-in toolbar. *Note that you cannot use this button to leave the Debug mode before the end of the process or before a break point if you clicked* ▶ .

If you stop the process while a splitter action task is being performed, the task will continue until the end of the source file has been reached.

Related topics:

- Add Job Information to the Sample Data (Page 290)
- Use the Message Area Right-Click Menu (Page 291)

17.1.3 Use the Message Area Right-Click Menu

The following procedures explain how you can use the right-click menu to perform various tasks in the Message Area.

To delete a line from the Messages area:

- Click the line and press **DELETE**.

To cut a line from the Messages area:

- Click the line and press **CTRL+X** or choose **Cut** from the right-click menu.

To copy a line from the Messages area:

- Click the line and press **CTRL+C** or choose **Copy** from the right-click menu.

To select all lines of the Messages area:

- Click any line and press **CTRL+A** or choose **Select All** from the right-click menu.

To clear the content in the Messages area:

- Click any line and choose **Clear Messages** from the right-click menu.

To save the content in the Messages area:

1. Click any line and choose **Save to File** from the right-click menu.
2. The **Save Log File** dialog box is displayed.

---

3. Choose a location and enter a name for the log file.
4. Click **OK**.

Related topics:

- Add Job Information to the Sample Data (Page 290)
- Perform Tasks in Debug Mode (Page 290)

18 Sending and Running a Configuration

Once you have created and debugged your processes using the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program, you are ready to send and run your configuration.

The PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program allows you to create, edit and save configurations, but it also lets you save the currently opened configuration as the current PlanetPress Watch/Server configuration, an operation referred to as sending a configuration. This section explains how you can send your configuration, how you can start PlanetPress Watch/Server, and how you can monitor PlanetPress Watch/Server.

In this section, you learn to:

- Send a PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration
- Start and Stop the PlanetPress Watch/Server Service
- Toggle the Run on Desktop Property
- View Runtime Information via the PlanetPress Suite Service Console
- Activate or Deactivate a Process
- Resubmit Backed Up Input Files to a Process

In addition, you will be able to answer the following questions:

- What is the difference between saving and sending a configuration?
- How do I start running my current PlanetPress Suite configuration?
- Which tools can I use to control and monitor the services used by my PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool?
- What can I do to save my input in case something fails?

18.1 Saving and Sending a Configuration

What is the difference between saving and sending a configuration?

As you already know, PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools are service applications which, once started, constantly run in the background to perform the tasks included in their current configuration file. The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program, on the other hand, lets you create, edit and save configuration files.

When you create and save a new configuration file, you are prompted provide a filename. The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Configuration program then saves your file as a standard configuration file and gives it a **pw7** extension (**MyNewConfig.pw7**, for example).

When you edit an existing configuration file, you have the choice to save it under the same name or to rename it. Note that when you edit the current PlanetPress Suite configuration, you are always prompted to provide a new filename.

Saving a configuration file never replaces the current PlanetPress Suite configuration file. To do this, you must use the **Send Configuration** command. When you do this, the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program saves the current configuration under the name **ppwatch.cfg**. If you do this while the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool is running, it will automatically be stopped and restarted.

See Send a PlanetPress Suite Configuration (Page 0).

Related topics:

- Running a PlanetPress Suite Configuration (Page 0)
- PlanetPress Suite Services Console (Page 0)
- Making a Process Active or Inactive (Page 0)
- Resubmitting Backed up Input Files (Page 0)

18.2 Running a PlanetPress Suite Configuration

How do I start running my current PlanetPress Suite configuration?

You can stop, start, pause, and resume PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool using the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program. These options are the same as those available for every other Windows service.

The current PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool status is always displayed in the lower-right corner of the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program window.

When the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool is started, it begins running all the processes included in its current configuration, based on each process' own schedules. It will keep running and performing tasks until you stop it, or until it receives a new configuration, in which case it will be stopped monetarily while the new configuration is loaded.

When the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool is paused, it immediately stops performing all the tasks included in its configuration. You can then use the **Resume** command to get the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool to pick up where it left off, or stop running the application altogether.

18.2.1 Running a PlanetPress Suite Configuration With a Different Account

When you started using the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program, you choose the user account your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool, PlanetPress Fax and PlanetPress Image use to identify themselves locally as well as on the network. This has an impact on which local and network resources can be used by these applications, as well as by all the services used by your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool.

When you actually start running your configuration, you may find that you need to change this setting to access necessary resources. In fact, there are a number of situations why you may have to do this, such as:

- You must run a configuration that was created on another workstation and you need to match the configuration used on the other workstation.
- You must switch to a different configuration which requires different resource access rights.
- You installed PlanetPress Fax or PlanetPress Image locally and you must now choose the same account for all applications.

For more information, refer to "Choose the Account to be Used by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools".

18.2.2 Running Processes on your Desktop

You may need to run a PlanetPress Suite process on your desktop to in order to see the operations the process performs in real-time.

- When a process runs on the desktop, software-user interactions, such as an application displaying a dialog box or a message box, is allowed. So this is the way to go for processes that include tasks that may require user input, such as External Program action tasks, for example. On the other hand, the absence of user reply to a dialog or message box being displayed may stop the whole process.
- When a process runs in the background, no software-user interaction is possible. This means that no user input is allowed for any task while the process is running.

Since PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools are typically meant to run without user interaction, all their processes are set to run in the background by default.

Related topics:

- Saving and Sending a Configuration

- PlanetPress Suite Services Console
- Making a Process Active or Inactive
- Resubmitting Backed up Input Files

PLANETPRESS. SUITE

18.3 PlanetPress Suite Services Console

Which tools can I use to control and monitor the services used by my PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool?

The PlanetPress Suite Service Console provides real-time information on what your PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool and its services are doing.

A) The PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool services monitored by the PlanetPress Suite Service Console. B) The runtime information provided by the console.

By default, it displays runtime information on the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool, but it can also provide information on the services used by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool, such as PlanetPress Fax, PlanetPress Image and the PlanetPress Suite Messenger.

Note that the amount of information generated by each service, and thus displayed via the PlanetPress Suite Services Console, is configurable.

You can use the PlanetPress Suite Service Console to manually start and stop the applications and plugins it monitors, although this is normally done via the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool Configuration program or by the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tool itself.

Related topics:

- Saving and Sending a Configuration
- Running PlanetPress Suite Configuration
- Making a Process Active or Inactive
- Resubmitting Backed up Input Files

18.4 Making a Process Active or Inactive

How can I prevent specific processes from running?

There are many reasons why you may want to prevent the tasks included in a given process from being performed. This can be done very easily by simply rendering the processes inactive. Making that active again is just as simple.

Bear in mind that when you make processes active or inactive, you are actually changing your configuration, and that you thus need to send your configuration to PlanetPress Watch/Server. If you try to send a configuration that contains only inactive processes, the PlanetPress Watch/Server Configuration program will ask you to confirm the operation. Note that if you wish to prevent this behavior, you may do so by changing the user options.

Related topics:

- Saving and Sending a Configuration
- Running PlanetPress Suite Configuration
- PlanetPress Suite Services Console
- Resubmitting Backed up Input Files

18.5 Resubmitting Backed up Input Files

What can I do to save my input in case something fails?

Each input task includes an option that lets you back up input files. This options is not selected by default, since it has the potential to generate a very large number of back up files.

But if, for a given input task, you did select this option and something goes wrong and an original input file is lost or corrupted, you will have the option to use the **Resubmit Job** command to pull the backed up input file into the process.

See Resubmit Backed Up Input Files to a Process.

Related topics:

- Saving and Sending a Configuration
- Running PlanetPress Suite Configuration
- PlanetPress Suite Services Console
- Making a Process Active or Inactive

18.6 Detailed Directions

This section contains detailed procedures that explain how you can:

- Send a PlanetPress Suite Configuration (Page 0)
- Start and Stop the PlanetPress Suite Workflow Tools Service (Page 0)
- Toggle the Run on Desktop Property (Page 0)
- View Runtime Information via the PlanetPress Suite Service Console (Page 0)
- Activate or Deactivate a Process (Page 0)
- Resubmit Backed Up Input Files to a Process (Page 0)